German I

First edition · 12 units · 36 lessons · one school year · Midterm and final exam · A main and a backup video for every lesson · Quick reference

FIRST EDITION

Course guide

German I is the first year of high-school German, written for students who are beginning the language or beginning it again with seriousness. Over thirty-six weeks the student learns to greet and converse, describe people, talk about family, school, time, food, the city, the body and clothes, the weather and the seasons, the home and the daily routine, the feasts of the Church, and what happened yesterday, with the grammar that holds it together: the present tense of regular, stem-changing and irregular verbs (sein, haben, werden, wissen), the genders and the cases (nominative, accusative and dative), possessives, word order with the verb second, separable, reflexive and modal verbs, the comparative and superlative, and the Perfekt with haben and sein.

Every lesson opens with a true story, from the Bible or from the history of the German-speaking lands, and each unit studies a great painting: Ludwig Richter's Bridal Procession in Spring, Holbein's Erasmus, Runge's Parents of the Artist, Anker's School Examination, Georg Flegel's still life, Eduard Gaertner's Berlin street, Holbein's little Prince Edward, Caspar David Friedrich's Winter Landscape with Church, Kersting's Embroiderer, Grünewald's Resurrection from the Isenheim Altarpiece, Stieler's Beethoven and Cranach's Luther as Junker Jörg. Every lesson has a verse in the King James Version and the Luther Bible.

The year closes with a five-minute presentation in German on a city or region of Germany, Austria or Switzerland, its history and its church, and with the first lines of Luther's Ein feste Burg ist unser Gott.

> Every embedded video comes from a channel approved for School Launch: lingoni GERMAN (friendly teachers from Germany whose short A1 lessons are the workhorse of the older grades),

> GermanPod101 (clear vocabulary, verb and conversation videos) and Sing mit mir – Kinderlieder (traditional German songs with the words on screen). The videos play in YouTube's privacy-enhanced player. Some channels close with an invitation to subscribe or to visit their website; you can stop the video when the lesson's part ends. You will hear small differences between speakers from Germany, Austria and Switzerland; all are good German. Please preview every video yourself before you show it to your student. The videos were chosen by title and channel from channels approved for School Launch, and YouTube may show its own suggestions when a video ends, so stay nearby and stop the player when the lesson's part is done.

Start with Lesson 1.1 →

Who it is for

Written for high-school students (grade 9 or older, about ages 14 and up) beginning German; no German is assumed. Students who finished the School Launch Grade 5–8 German courses will recognize much of Units 1–6 and can move faster there. The student reads the lessons on his or her own; a parent or teacher listens to the oral work, asks the oral questions on the tests and checks the written work against the answer keys.

How to use this course

1. **The weekly rhythm.** The year has 36 lessons, one a week, each with four sessions of 40–50 minutes. Session 1 is the warm-up, the story, the How German works teaching and the video. Session 2 is the picture study (in one lesson of each unit) or the backup video, the key terms and the German notebook. Session 3 is the activity. Session 4 is the worked examples, the practice, the game and the worksheet. At the end of each unit, take the unit test and do the unit challenge.
2. **Speak every day.** A language is learned with the mouth as well as the eyes. Read every German example aloud, say the verb charts standing up, and greet the family in German. Ten minutes of German out loud every day does more than an hour of silent reading once a week.

3. **Story, then grammar, then doing.** The paragraph marked *The story* tells a Bible story or a true story from history; the paragraphs marked *How German works* teach the grammar with examples. After each paragraph, close the book and explain it back in your own words.
4. **Flashcards and the word list.** Every lesson ends with a vocabulary list; make a flashcard for each word (German on the front with its der, die or das, English on the back) and each verb chart. Learn every noun with its article and its color: many students write der words in blue, die words in red and das words in green. Run the whole deck at the start of every session; a card right three days in a row moves to a weekly pile.
5. **The German notebook.** Keep one notebook for the year for the charts, the copied verses, the worked examples and the activities. Date every page.
6. **Tests and exams.** Each unit ends with a 50-point test; the first questions are oral, asked by the parent. The midterm after Unit 6 and the final after Unit 12 are 100 points each. Answer keys for every worksheet, unit test and exam are separate PDFs for the parent.
7. **The German Bible.** German verses are quoted from the Luther Bible in its 1912 revision, the public-domain text of the translation Martin Luther made in the 1520s and 1530s, the German counterpart of the King James. It keeps the older spelling of 1912 (daß for dass, for example). Where the King James prints the LORD in capitals, Luther prints der HERR. The English verse is always the King James Version, quoted exactly.

Scope and sequence

UNIT 1 · WEEKS 1–3

Guten Tag! Grüßen, Buchstaben, Zahlen

Greetings, courtesy and the two words for you, du and Sie, with Ludwig Richter's Bridal Procession in Spring and Boaz's greeting to his reapers; the German alphabet, the umlauts ä, ö, ü, the letter ß and the main sound rules, read aloud in John 1:1; and the numbers from 0 to 100, with ages, telephone numbers and the first day of creation.

1.1 Guten Tag: Greetings, du and Sie

1.2 Das Alphabet: Letters and Sounds

1.3 Die Zahlen: Numbers 0 to 100

UNIT 2 · WEEKS 4–6

Ich bin: sein und Personalpronomen

The subject pronouns and the verb sein (to be), with God's name given to Moses, ICH WERDE SEIN; saying where you come from and what languages you speak with kommen, wohnen and sprechen, with the crowd at Pentecost; and describing people with adjectives, nicht and sehr, asking yes-no and W-questions, with Holbein's portrait of the scholar Erasmus and Psalm 139.

2.1 Ich bin, du bist: Pronouns and sein

2.2 Woher kommst du? Countries and Languages

2.3 Wie ist er? Describing People and Asking Questions

UNIT 3 · WEEKS 7–9

Die Familie: haben und Possessivartikel

Family members, with Philipp Otto Runge's portrait of his parents and two grandchildren and the Fifth Commandment; the verb haben, the three genders der, die, das, the indefinite article ein, eine and noun plurals, with Psalm 127; and the possessive articles mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer, ihr, Ihr, with Ruth's promise to Naomi.

3.1 Meine Familie: Family Members

3.2 Ich habe: haben, Genders and Plurals

3.3 Mein, dein, sein: Possessives

UNIT 4 · WEEKS 10–12

In der Schule: Verben und Uhrzeit

School things and the articles, with ein and kein, in Albert Anker's village School Examination and the beginning of wisdom in Proverbs 1:7; the present tense of regular verbs and school subjects, with Proverbs 22:6; and telling time, the days of the week and the rule that the verb comes second, with Ecclesiastes 3:1: Ein jegliches hat seine Zeit.

4.1 Was ist das? Classroom Things, ein and kein

4.2 Ich lerne: Regular Verbs and School Subjects

4.3 Wie spät ist es? Time, Days and Word Order

UNIT 5 · WEEKS 13–15

Guten Appetit! Essen, Akkusativ, Café

Food, drink and meals with essen and trinken, with Georg Flegel's still life of bread and fried eggs and the Lord's Prayer: Unser täglich Brot gib uns heute; the accusative case for direct objects (den, einen, keinen, meinen) with haben, brauchen and möchten, with Jesus the bread of life; and ordering in a café or bakery, prices in euros, with 1 Corinthians 10:31.

5.1 Das Essen: Food, Drink and Meals

5.2 Den, einen, keinen: The Accusative

5.3 Im Café: Ordering and Prices

UNIT 6 · WEEKS 16–18

In der Stadt: gehen, fahren, Wege

Places in town with es gibt and wo ist?, with Eduard Gaertner's painting of a busy old Berlin street and the city set on a hill; going and traveling with gehen and fahren (du fährst), means of transport and where to (nach, zu, in), with Psalm 121:8; and asking and giving directions with the imperative (Gehen Sie geradeaus!), with Jesus the Way. The unit closes the first semester and is followed by the midterm.

6.1 Was gibt es in der Stadt? Places in Town

6.2 Wir fahren: gehen, fahren and Transport

6.3 Wie komme ich zum…? Directions and the Imperative

UNIT 7 · WEEKS 19–21

Körper und Kleidung: tragen und dieser

The body and saying what hurts, at the doctor's, with Paul's picture of the church as one body; clothing and colors with tragen (du trägst) and anziehen, with Holbein's portrait of the baby prince Edward in red and gold and the lilies of the field; and choosing and buying clothes with dieser and welcher, adjectives and Wie gefällt dir…?, with the LORD who looks on the heart.

7.1 Der Körper: Body and Health

7.2 Die Kleidung: Clothes, Colors and tragen

7.3 Dieser oder jener? Choosing and Buying

UNIT 8 · WEEKS 22–24

Wetter, Jahreszeiten und gern

Talking about the weather with es regnet and es schneit, with Caspar David Friedrich's snowy Winter Landscape with Church and the God who gives snow like wool; the seasons, months and dates (am ersten Mai), with God's promise to Noah that summer and winter shall not cease; and saying what you like to do with gern, lieber and am liebsten, with the blessed man whose delight is in the law of the LORD.

8.1 Das Wetter: Weather

8.2 Jahreszeiten, Monate und Daten

8.3 Gern, lieber, am liebsten: Hobbies

UNIT 9 · WEEKS 25–27

Mein Tag, mein Haus: reflexive Verben, Dativ, Modalverben

The daily routine with reflexive verbs (ich wasche mich) and separable verbs (ich stehe auf), with the psalmist who prays early in the morning; the house and its rooms, and saying where things are with the dative (im Wohnzimmer, auf dem Tisch), with Kersting's quiet painting of a young woman embroidering and the Father's house of many mansions; and the modal verbs können, müssen, wollen, dürfen, sollen and möchten, with Jesus' call to take up the cross.

9.1 Mein Tag: Reflexive and Separable Verbs

9.2 Das Haus: Rooms, Furniture and the Dative

9.3 Modalverben: können, müssen, wollen

…

UNIT 10 · WEEKS 28–30

Feste und Glaube: Weihnachten, Ostern, das Credo

The great feasts of the Church year in German-speaking lands. Christmas customs and the Christmas story with verbs that change e to i (er gibt, sie isst); Easter with Grünewald's blazing Resurrection from the Isenheim Altarpiece and verbs that change e to ie and a to ä (er sieht, er läuft); and the Apostles' Creed with the irregular verbs werden and wissen, with the verse that joins believing in the heart and confessing with the mouth.

10.1 Weihnachten: Christmas and Verbs with e → i

10.2 Ostern: Easter and Verbs with e → ie and a → ä

10.3 Das Glaubensbekenntnis: werden and wissen

UNIT 11 · WEEKS 31–33

Was hast du gemacht? Das Perfekt

Talking about the past with the Perfekt: regular verbs with haben and ge-…-t, with Stieler's portrait of Beethoven at work on his Missa solemnis and Paul's Ich habe einen guten Kampf gekämpft; irregular participles ending in -en, with old Simeon who held the Christ child and said Meine Augen haben deinen Heiland gesehen; and verbs of motion and change that take sein, with Bach's long walk to Lübeck and Psalm 37:25, Ich bin jung gewesen und alt geworden.

11.1 Das Perfekt mit haben: Regular Verbs

11.2 Unregelmäßige Partizipien: Irregular Participles

11.3 Das Perfekt mit sein: Motion and Change

UNIT 12 · WEEKS 34–36

Deutschland, Österreich, die Schweiz: Vergleiche und Rückblick

The German-speaking countries, their languages and capitals, and the word order time–manner–place, with Paul at Athens and the God who made of one blood all nations; Luther hidden at the Wartburg as Junker Jörg, painted by Cranach, and the comparative (größer als, besser als), with Psalm 46 and Ein feste Burg; and the superlative and the past forms war and hatte, with the peaceful prayers of Leipzig in 1989, Paul's faith, hope and charity, and a review of the year.

12.1 Die deutschsprachigen Länder: Countries and Word Order

12.2 Luther auf der Wartburg: the Comparative

12.3 Der, die, das Beste: Superlative, war and hatte, and Review

Weekly pacing calendar

WEEK	PLAN
1	• Session 1: Lesson 1.1 Guten Tag: Greetings, du and Sie: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 1.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 1.1 activity (greeting role-plays) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet *Four sessions a week: one to learn, one to look and record, one to do, one to practice. On the fifth day, run the flashcards and read the week's verse aloud in German. The midterm comes after week 18 and the final after week 36.*
2	• Session 1: Lesson 1.2 Das Alphabet: Letters and Sounds: warm-up, story, How German works and video

WEEK	PLAN
	• Session 2: Lesson 1.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 1.2 activity (alphabet and sound posters) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
3	• Session 1: Lesson 1.3 Die Zahlen: Numbers 0 to 100: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 1.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 1.3 activity (family number book) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 1 review and unit challenge (der besuch (the visit))
4	• Session 1: Lesson 2.1 Ich bin, du bist: Pronouns and sein: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 2.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 2.1 activity (who is who? picture cards) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
5	• Session 1: Lesson 2.2 Woher kommst du? Countries and Languages: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 2.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 2.2 activity (map of german-speaking europe and my family's roots) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
6	• Session 1: Lesson 2.3 Wie ist er? Describing People and Asking Questions: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 2.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 2.3 activity (describe and guess) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 2 review and unit challenge (ein steckbrief (a profile))
7	• Session 1: Lesson 3.1 Meine Familie: Family Members: warm-up, story, How German works and video

WEEK	PLAN
	• Session 2: Lesson 3.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 3.1 activity (family photo album) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
8	• Session 1: Lesson 3.2 Ich habe: haben, Genders and Plurals: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 3.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 3.2 activity (color-coded house labels) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
9	• Session 1: Lesson 3.3 Mein, dein, sein: Possessives: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 3.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 3.3 activity (interview and report) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 3 review and unit challenge (mein familienstammbaum (my family tree))
10	• Session 1: Lesson 4.1 Was ist das? Classroom Things, ein and kein: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 4.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 4.1 activity (label your classroom) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
11	• Session 1: Lesson 4.2 Ich lerne: Regular Verbs and School Subjects: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 4.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 4.2 activity (verb wheel) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
12	• Session 1: Lesson 4.3 Wie spät ist es? Time, Days and Word Order: warm-up, story, How German works and video

WEEK	PLAN
	• Session 2: Lesson 4.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 4.3 activity (paper plate clock and weekly schedule) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 4 review and unit challenge (mein stundenplan (my timetable))
13	• Session 1: Lesson 5.1 Das Essen: Food, Drink and Meals: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 5.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 5.1 activity (kitchen tour and grocery list) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
14	• Session 1: Lesson 5.2 Den, einen, keinen: The Accusative: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 5.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 5.2 activity (accusative shopping game) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
15	• Session 1: Lesson 5.3 Im Café: Ordering and Prices: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 5.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 5.3 activity (bakery role-play) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 5 review and unit challenge (das café (a café role-play and menu))
16	• Session 1: Lesson 6.1 Was gibt es in der Stadt? Places in Town: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 6.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 6.1 activity (town map) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
17	• Session 1: Lesson 6.2 Wir fahren: gehen, fahren and Transport: warm-up, story, How German works and video

WEEK	PLAN
	• Session 2: Lesson 6.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 6.2 activity (family travel survey) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
18	• Session 1: Lesson 6.3 Wie komme ich zum…? Directions and the Imperative: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 6.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 6.3 activity (treasure hunt with german directions) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 6 review and unit challenge (stadtführung (a town tour)) • Midterm exam (Units 1–6)
19	• Session 1: Lesson 7.1 Der Körper: Body and Health: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 7.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 7.1 activity (body poster and doctor's visit) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
20	• Session 1: Lesson 7.2 Die Kleidung: Clothes, Colors and tragen: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 7.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 7.2 activity (wardrobe labels and what to wear) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
21	• Session 1: Lesson 7.3 Dieser oder jener? Choosing and Buying: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 7.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 7.3 activity (clothing store role-play) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 7 review and unit challenge (modenschau (a fashion show) and a visit to the doctor)

WEEK	PLAN
22	• Session 1: Lesson 8.1 Das Wetter: Weather: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 8.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 8.1 activity (weather journal and forecast) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
23	• Session 1: Lesson 8.2 Jahreszeiten, Monate und Daten: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 8.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 8.2 activity (family birthday calendar) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
24	• Session 1: Lesson 8.3 Gern, lieber, am liebsten: Hobbies: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 8.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 8.3 activity (family hobby survey) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 8 review and unit challenge (wetterbericht und jahreskalender (weather report and calendar))
25	• Session 1: Lesson 9.1 Mein Tag: Reflexive and Separable Verbs: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 9.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 9.1 activity (mein tagesablauf comic) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
26	• Session 1: Lesson 9.2 Das Haus: Rooms, Furniture and the Dative: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 9.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 9.2 activity (floor plan and house tour) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet

WEEK	PLAN
27	• Session 1: Lesson 9.3 Modalverben: können, müssen, wollen …: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 9.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 9.3 activity (rules and abilities poster) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 9 review and unit challenge (mein haus und mein tag (my house and my day))
28	• Session 1: Lesson 10.1 Weihnachten: Christmas and Verbs with e → i: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 10.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 10.1 activity (adventskranz and christmas card) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
29	• Session 1: Lesson 10.2 Ostern: Easter and Verbs with e → ie and a → ä: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 10.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 10.2 activity (easter story retelling) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
30	• Session 1: Lesson 10.3 Das Glaubensbekenntnis: werden and wissen: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 10.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 10.3 activity (creed card and verb wheel) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 10 review and unit challenge (das kirchenjahr (the church year) in german)
31	• Session 1: Lesson 11.1 Das Perfekt mit haben: Regular Verbs: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 11.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 11.1 activity (gestern: a perfekt diary)

WEEK	PLAN
	• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
32	• Session 1: Lesson 11.2 Unregelmäßige Partizipien: Irregular Participles: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 11.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 11.2 activity (wochenende interview) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
33	• Session 1: Lesson 11.3 Das Perfekt mit sein: Motion and Change: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 11.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 11.3 activity (reisebericht (travel report)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 11 review and unit challenge (mein tagebuch and a famous german life)
34	• Session 1: Lesson 12.1 Die deutschsprachigen Länder: Countries and Word Order: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 12.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 12.1 activity (map of the german-speaking lands) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
35	• Session 1: Lesson 12.2 Luther auf der Wartburg: the Comparative: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 12.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 12.2 activity (vergleiche (comparisons) chart) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
36	• Session 1: Lesson 12.3 Der, die, das Beste: Superlative, war and hatte, and Review: warm-up, story, How German works and video • Session 2: Lesson 12.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, German notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 12.3 activity (year-end review book) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet

WEEK	PLAN
	• End of unit: Unit 12 review and unit challenge (eine reise durch die deutschsprachigen länder (a journey through the german-speaking lands)) • Final exam (cumulative)

Materials

German notebook (any notebook)

One for the year: charts, verses, worked examples and activities.

Index cards (about 400) and a box or binder rings

For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson. Blue, red and green pens help with der, die and das.

A Luther Bible (print, or free online)

Bible Gateway lists it as Luther Bibel 1545; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used in every lesson.

A map of Europe or an atlas

For Germany, Austria and Switzerland in Units 6 and 12.

Paper plates, sticky notes, markers and household things

For the clock, the labels, the café, the town map and the other activities.

A device to play the videos

Most lessons have a main video and a backup.

Grading

Grades come from steady daily work and from honest tests: a language is learned by repetition, and a student who speaks German out loud daily, keeps the flashcard deck and the notebook, and corrects his or her own practice will do well on the tests.

PART	%
Daily speaking, flashcards and recitation	20
German notebook, worksheets and practice (corrected with the keys)	20

PART	%
Unit tests (12)	**25**
Unit challenges (12)	**10**
Midterm exam	**10**
Final exam	**15**

Scale: A 90–100, B 80–89, C 70–79, D 60–69. Below 60 on a unit test: review the unit's charts and practice, then retake the test.

- A verb counts when it is in the right person and tense and spelled correctly, umlauts included. A noun counts when it has the right article and a capital letter.
- Oral questions are graded on being understood: a German speaker should be able to understand the answer. Accent and speed come with time.
- For a student who writes slowly, unit tests may be done orally with the parent writing down the answers.

A NOTE TO PARENTS

You do not need to know German to teach this course. Every example has its translation, every practice question and test has its answer in a separate key, and almost every lesson has two videos with native speakers. Your job is to listen to the oral work, ask the oral test questions, and check the written work against the keys.

This course teaches standard German as spoken in Germany, with notes on Austrian and Swiss usage where they differ. The Luther Bible uses du in prayer to God and between friends; the lessons point this out so that it never confuses the student.

The stories are drawn from Scripture and from the history of the German-speaking lands, told simply and honestly. The picture studies are public-domain paintings from major museums. Please preview every video yourself before you show it to your student. The videos were chosen by title and channel from channels approved for School Launch, and YouTube may show its own suggestions when a video ends, so stay nearby and stop the player when the lesson's part is done.

Vocabulary for the course

Standard German. Standard German (Hochdeutsch), as taught in schools in Germany, Austria and Switzerland. German is spelled almost exactly as it sounds, so once the letters are learned, any word can be read aloud. Most words lean on the first syllable, shown here in capitals. In the respellings, kh is the breathy ch of Bach (after a, o, u) or the softer ch of ich (after e and i, like a loud whispered h at the front of the mouth); ü is said like ee with rounded lips, ö like ay with rounded lips, uh is the soft e at the end of words like bitte, and r is a soft growl in the back of the throat, often fading to ah at the end of a word. The letter ß (Eszett) is a double s.

Every week's list is printed again inside that lesson. Say the capital letters loudest.

1.1 Guten Tag: greetings, du and sie

Guten Morgen
GOO-ten MOR-gen
greeting
good morning

Guten Tag
GOO-ten TAHK
greeting
good day; hello

Guten Abend
GOO-ten AH-bent
greeting
good evening

Auf Wiedersehen
owf VEE-der-zay-en
phrase
goodbye

Tschüss
CHÜSS
phrase
bye (informal)

Herr / Frau
HAIR / FROW
title
Mr. / Mrs., Ms.

Wie geht es Ihnen?
vee GAYT es EE-nen
phrase
How are you? (formal)

Entschuldigung
ent-SHOOL-dee-goong
die · phrase
excuse me; sorry

bitte
BIT-tuh
adverb
please; you’re welcome

danke
DAHN-kuh
interjection
thank you

1.2 DAS ALPHABET: LETTERS AND SOUNDS

das Alphabet
dahs ahl-fah-BAYT
das · noun
alphabet

der Buchstabe
dehr BOOKH-shtah-buh
der · noun
letter

buchstabieren
bookh-shtah-BEE-ren
verb
to spell

das Wort
dahs VORT
das · noun
word

der Anfang
dehr AHN-fahng
der · noun
beginning

die Straße
dee SHTRAH-suh
die · noun
street

schön
SHÖN
adjective
beautiful; nice

wie, bitte?
vee BIT-tuh
phrase
pardon? (asking to repeat)

der Umlaut
dehr OOM-lowt
der · noun
umlaut (ä, ö, ü)

das Eszett
dahs es-TSET
das · noun
the letter ß

1.3 DIE ZAHLEN: NUMBERS 0 TO 100

die Zahl
dee TSAHL

die · noun

number

zählen
TSAY-len

verb

to count

zwanzig
TSVAHN-tsikh

number

twenty

dreißig
DRY-sikh

number

thirty

hundert
HOON-dert

number

hundred

das Jahr
dahs YAHR

das · noun

year

alt
AHLT

adjective

old

wie viele
vee FEE-luh

question

how many

die Telefonnummer
dee teh-leh-FOHN-noom-mer

die · noun

telephone number

siebzehn
ZEEP-tsayn

number

seventeen

2.1 ICH BIN, DU BIST: PRONOUNS AND SEIN

ich
IKH

pronoun

I

du
DOO

pronoun

you (familiar)

er / sie / es

AIR / ZEE / ESS

pronouns

he / she / it

wir

VEER

pronoun

we

ihr

EER

pronoun

you (plural, familiar)

Sie

ZEE

pronoun

you (polite)

sein

ZINE

verb (irregular)

to be

der Lehrer

dehr LAY-rer

der · noun

teacher (a woman: die Lehrerin)

der Schüler

dehr SHÜ-ler

der · noun

pupil, student (a girl: die Schülerin)

das Pronomen

dahs proh-NOH-men

das · noun

pronoun

2.2 WOHER KOMMST DU? COUNTRIES AND LANGUAGES

kommen

KOM-men

verb

to come

wohnen

VOH-nen

verb

to live, reside

sprechen

SHPREKH-en

verb (e → i)

to speak

woher

voh-HAIR

question

where from

das Land

dahs LAHNT

das · noun

country

die Sprache

dee SHPRAH-khuh

die · noun

language

Deutschland

DOYCH-lahnt

das · noun

Germany

Österreich

ÖS-ter-rikh

noun

Austria

die Schweiz

dee SHVITES

die · noun

Switzerland

heißen

HY-sen

verb

to be called

wo

VOH

question word

where

2.3 WIE IST ER? DESCRIBING PEOPLE AND ASKING QUESTIONS

groß / klein

GROHS / KLINE

adjectives

big, tall / small, short

alt / jung

AHLT / YOONG

adjectives

old / young

nett

NET

adjective

nice

lustig

LOOS-tikh

adjective

funny

klug
KLOOK
adjective
smart, wise

fleißig
FLY-sikh
adjective
hard-working

nicht
NIKHT
adverb
not

warum
vah-ROOM
question
why

sehr
ZAIR
adverb
very

die Frage
dee FRAH-guh
die · noun
question

3.1 MEINE FAMILIE: FAMILY MEMBERS

der Vater / die Mutter
FAH-ter / MOOT-ter
der/die · noun
father / mother

die Eltern
EL-tern
die (plural)
parents

der Bruder
dehr BROO-der
der · noun
brother

die Schwester
dee SHVES-ter
die · noun
sister

die Geschwister
guh-SHVIS-ter
die (plural)
siblings

der Sohn / die Tochter
ZOHN / TOKH-ter
der/die · noun
son / daughter

der Onkel / die Tante
ONG-kel / TAHN-tuh
der/die · noun
uncle / aunt

der Großvater
dehr GROHS-fah-ter
der · noun
grandfather

die Großmutter
dee GROHS-moot-ter
die · noun
grandmother

der Cousin / die Kusine
koo-ZANG / koo-ZEE-nuh
der/die · noun
cousin

die Familie
dee fah-MEE-lyuh
die · noun
family

die Großeltern
dee GROHS-el-tern
die · plural noun
grandparents

3.2 ICH HABE: HABEN, GENDERS AND PLURALS

haben
HAH-ben
verb (irregular)
to have

der Tisch
dehr TISH
der · noun
table

die Lampe
dee LAHM-puh
die · noun
lamp

das Buch / die Bücher
dahs BOOKH / dee BÜ-kher
das · noun
book / books

das Mädchen
dahs MAYT-khen
das · noun
girl

der Junge
dehr YOONG-uh
der · noun
boy

das Kind / die Kinder

KINT / KIN-der

das · noun

child / children

die Gabe

dee GAH-buh

die · noun

gift

das Geschlecht

dahs guh-SHLEKHT

das · noun

gender

der Plural

dehr ploo-RAHL

der · noun

plural

3.3 MEIN, DEIN, SEIN: POSSESSIVES

mein

MINE

possessive

my

dein

DINE

possessive

your (familiar)

sein

ZINE

possessive

his; its

ihr

EER

possessive

her; their

unser

OON-zer

possessive

our

euer

OY-er

possessive

your (plural familiar)

Ihr

EER

possessive

your (polite)

das Volk

dahs FOLK

das · noun

people, nation

die Kinder

dee KIN-der

die · plural noun

children

das Haus

dahs HOWS

das · noun

house

4.1 WAS IST DAS? CLASSROOM THINGS, EIN AND KEIN

die Schule

dee SHOO-luh

die · noun

school

der Bleistift

dehr BLY-shtift

der · noun

pencil

der Kuli

dehr KOO-lee

der · noun

ballpoint pen

das Heft

dahs HEFT

das · noun

notebook

die Tafel

dee TAH-fel

die · noun

board

der Stuhl

dehr SHTOOL

der · noun

chair

das Fenster

dahs FEN-ster

das · noun

window

kein

KINE

article

no, not a

die Schere

dee SHAY-ruh

die · noun

scissors

das Wörterbuch

dahs VÖR-ter-bookh

das · noun

dictionary

4.2 ICH LERNE: REGULAR VERBS AND SCHOOL SUBJECTS

lernen
LAIR-nen
verb
to learn, study

machen
MAH-khen
verb
to do, make

spielen
SHPEE-len
verb
to play

arbeiten
AR-bye-ten
verb
to work

schreiben
SHRY-ben
verb
to write

beten
BAY-ten
verb
to pray

das Fach
dahs FAHKH
das · noun
school subject

das Lieblingsfach
dahs LEEP-lings-fahkh
das · noun
favorite subject

hören
HÖ-ren
verb
to hear

fragen
FRAH-gen
verb
to ask

4.3 WIE SPÄT IST ES? TIME, DAYS AND WORD ORDER

die Uhr
dee OOR
die · noun
clock; o’clock

halb
HAHLP
adverb
half

das Viertel

dahs FEER-tel

das · noun

quarter

nach / vor

NAHKH / FOR

prepositions

after / before

der Montag

dehr MOHN-tahk

der · noun

Monday

der Sonntag

dehr ZON-tahk

der · noun

Sunday

am Morgen / am Abend

ahm MOR-gen / ahm AH-bent

phrases

in the morning / evening

die Zeit

dee TSITE

die · noun

time

die Stunde

dee SHTOON-duh

die · noun

hour; lesson

der Samstag

dehr ZAHMS-tahk

der · noun

Saturday

5.1 DAS ESSEN: FOOD, DRINK AND MEALS

das Brot

dahs BROHT

das · noun

bread

das Brötchen

dahs BRÖT-khen

das · noun

roll

der Käse

dehr KAY-zuh

der · noun

cheese

das Ei

dahs EYE

das · noun

egg

der Apfel

dehr AHP-fel

der · noun

apple

die Milch

dee MILKH

die · noun

milk

essen

ES-sen

verb (e → i)

to eat

trinken

TRING-ken

verb

to drink

das Frühstück

dahs FRÜ-shtük

das · noun

breakfast

die Wurst

dee VOORST

die · noun

sausage

5.2 DEN, EINEN, KEINEN: THE ACCUSATIVE

der Akkusativ

dehr AHK-koo-zah-teef

der · noun

accusative case

brauchen

BROW-khen

verb

to need

kaufen

KOW-fen

verb

to buy

sehen

ZAY-en

verb (e → ie)

to see

es gibt

es GIPT

phrase + acc.

there is, there are

den / einen / keinen

DAYN / EYE-nen / KINE-en

articles (acc. masc.)

the / a / no

ihn
EEN
pronoun (acc.)
him; it

mich / dich
MIKH / DIKH
pronouns (acc.)
me / you

der Nominativ
dehr NOH-mee-nah-teef
der · noun
nominative case

das Objekt
dahs op-YEKT
das · noun
object

5.3 IM CAFÉ: ORDERING AND PRICES

das Café
dahs kah-FAY
das · noun
café

die Bäckerei
dee bek-keh-RYE
die · noun
bakery

die Speisekarte
dee SHPY-zuh-kar-tuh
die · noun
menu

die Rechnung
dee REKH-noong
die · noun
bill

möchten
MÖKH-ten
verb form
would like

kosten
KOS-ten
verb
to cost

der Euro
dehr OY-roh
der · noun
euro

das Stück
dahs SHTÜK
das · noun
piece

der Tee
dehr TAY
der · noun
tea

zahlen
TSAH-len
verb
to pay

6.1 WAS GIBT ES IN DER STADT? PLACES IN TOWN

die Stadt
dee SHTAHT
die · noun
city, town

die Kirche
dee KEER-khuh
die · noun
church

der Bahnhof
dehr BAHN-hohf
der · noun
train station

das Rathaus
dahs RAHT-hows
das · noun
town hall

die Post
dee POST
die · noun
post office

die Bibliothek
dee bib-lee-oh-TAYK
die · noun
library

der Park
dehr PARK
der · noun
park

es gibt
es GIPT
phrase
there is, there are

das Dorf
dahs DORF
das · noun
village

der Marktplatz
dehr MARKT-plahts
der · noun
market square

6.2 WIR FAHREN: GEHEN, FAHREN AND TRANSPORT

gehen
GAY-en

verb

to go, walk

fahren
FAH-ren

verb (a→ä)

to go (by vehicle), drive

nehmen
NAY-men

verb (e→i)

to take

das Auto
dahs OW-toh

das · noun

car

der Bus
dehr BOOS

der · noun

bus

der Zug
dehr TSOOK

der · noun

train

das Fahrrad
dahs FAHR-raht

das · noun

bicycle

nach Hause / zu Hause
nahkh HOW-zuh / tsoo HOW-zuh

phrases

home (direction) / at home

zu Fuß
tsoo FOOS

phrase

on foot

das Flugzeug
dahs FLOOK-tsoyk

das · noun

airplane

6.3 WIE KOMME ICH ZUM…? DIRECTIONS AND THE IMPERATIVE

der Weg
dehr VAYK

der · noun

way, path

links
LINKS

adverb

left

rechts
REKHTS
adverb
right

geradeaus
guh-RAH-duh-OWS
adverb
straight ahead

die Ampel
dee AHM-pel
die · noun
traffic light

die Kreuzung
dee KROY-tsoong
die · noun
intersection

weit / nah
VITE / NAH
adjectives
far / near

die Wahrheit
dee VAHR-hite
die · noun
truth

die Brücke
dee BRÜK-kuh
die · noun
bridge

der Imperativ
dehr im-peh-rah-TEEF
der · noun
imperative

7.1 DER KÖRPER: BODY AND HEALTH

der Kopf
dehr KOPF
der · noun
head

das Auge
dahs OW-guh
das · noun
eye

das Ohr
dahs OHR
das · noun
ear

der Mund
dehr MOONT
der · noun
mouth

die Hand / die Hände
HAHNT / HEN-duh
die · noun
hand / hands

das Bein
dahs BINE
das · noun
leg

der Fuß / die Füße
FOOS / FÜ-suh
der · noun
foot / feet

weh tun
VAY toon
verb phrase
to hurt

der Körper
dehr KÖR-per
der · noun
body

der Arzt / die Ärztin
dehr ARTST / dee AIRTS-tin
der / die · noun
doctor

7.2 DIE KLEIDUNG: CLOTHES, COLORS AND TRAGEN

die Kleidung
dee KLY-doong
die · noun
clothing

die Hose
dee HOH-zuh
die · noun
trousers, pants

das Hemd
dahs HEMT
das · noun
shirt

der Pullover
dehr poo-LOH-ver
der · noun
sweater

die Jacke
dee YAHK-kuh
die · noun
jacket

das Kleid
dahs KLITE
das · noun
dress

der Schuh

dehr SHOO

der · noun

shoe

tragen

TRAH-gen

verb (a → ä)

to wear; carry

anziehen

AHN-tsee-en

separable verb

to put on

die Farbe

dee FAR-buh

die · noun

color

7.3 DIESER ODER JENER? CHOOSING AND BUYING

dieser

DEE-zer

determiner

this

welcher

VEL-kher

question word

which

gefallen

guh-FAHL-len

verb + dative

to please

teuer

TOY-er

adjective

expensive

billig

BIL-likh

adjective

cheap

die Größe

dee GRÖ-suh

die · noun

size

suchen

ZOO-khen

verb

to look for

das Herz

dahs HAIRTS

das · noun

heart

dieses Hemd

DEE-zes HEMT

phrase

this shirt

Wie gefällt dir ...?

vee guh-FELT deer

phrase

How do you like ...?

8.1 DAS WETTER: WEATHER

das Wetter

dahs VET-ter

das · noun

weather

es regnet

es RAYG-net

verb phrase

it is raining

es schneit

es SHNITE

verb phrase

it is snowing

die Sonne

dee ZON-nuh

die · noun

sun

kalt

KAHLT

adjective

cold

warm

VARM

adjective

warm

windig

VIN-dikh

adjective

windy

der Grad

dehr GRAHT

der · noun

degree

der Schnee

dehr SHNAY

der · noun

snow

der Regen

dehr RAY-gen

der · noun

rain

8.2 JAHRESZEITEN, MONATE UND DATEN

der Frühling
dehr FRÜ-ling

der · noun

spring

der Sommer
dehr ZOM-mer

der · noun

summer

der Herbst
dehr HAIRPST

der · noun

autumn

der Winter
dehr VIN-ter

der · noun

winter

der Monat
dehr MOH-naht

der · noun

month

der erste
dehr AIR-stuh

ordinal

the first

der dritte
dehr DRIT-tuh

ordinal

the third

der Geburtstag
dehr guh-BOORTS-tahk

der · noun

birthday

die Jahreszeit
dee YAH-res-tsite

die · noun

season

das Datum
dahs DAH-toom

das · noun

date

8.3 GERN, LIEBER, AM LIEBSTEN: HOBBIES

gern
GAIRN

adverb

gladly; like to

lieber
LEE-ber

adverb

rather; prefer to

am liebsten

ahm LEEP-sten

adverb

like best

mögen

MÖ-gen

verb

to like

lesen

LAY-zen

verb (e → ie)

to read

wandern

VAHN-dern

verb

to hike

malen

MAH-len

verb

to paint

die Freizeit

dee FRY-tsite

die · noun

free time

das Hobby

dahs HOB-bee

das · noun

hobby

zeichnen

TSIKH-nen

verb

to draw

9.1 MEIN TAG: REFLEXIVE AND SEPARABLE VERBS

sich waschen

zikh VAH-shen

reflexive verb (a → ä)

to wash oneself

sich anziehen

zikh AHN-tsee-en

reflexive, separable

to get dressed

sich freuen

zikh FROY-en

reflexive verb

to be glad

aufstehen

OWF-shtay-en

separable verb

to get up

aufwachen

OWF-vah-khen

separable verb

to wake up

einkaufen

INE-kow-fen

separable verb

to shop

anrufen

AHN-roo-fen

separable verb

to phone

frühstücken

FRÜ-shtü-ken

verb

to have breakfast

der Tagesablauf

dehr TAH-ges-ahp-lowf

der · noun

daily routine

sich beeilen

zikh buh-EYE-len

reflexive verb

to hurry

9.2 DAS HAUS: ROOMS, FURNITURE AND THE DATIVE

das Zimmer

dahs TSIM-mer

das · noun

room

die Küche

dee KÜ-khuh

die · noun

kitchen

das Wohnzimmer

dahs VOHN-tsim-mer

das · noun

living room

das Bett

dahs BET

das · noun

bed

der Stuhl

dehr SHTOOL

der · noun

chair

der Schrank

dehr SHRAHNK

der · noun

wardrobe, cupboard

die Wand

dee VAHNT

die · noun

wall

neben

NAY-ben

preposition

next to

die Wohnung

dee VOH-noong

die · noun

apartment; dwelling

die Möbel

dee MÖ-bel

die · plural noun

furniture

9.3 MODALVERBEN: KÖNNEN, MÜSSEN, WOLLEN ...

können

KÖN-nen

modal verb

can

müssen

MÜS-sen

modal verb

must, have to

wollen

VOL-len

modal verb

to want to

dürfen

DÜR-fen

modal verb

may

sollen

ZOL-len

modal verb

should

möchten

MÖKH-ten

modal verb

would like to

helfen

HEL-fen

verb (e → i) + dative

to help

nachfolgen

NAHKH-fol-gen

separable verb

to follow

das Modalverb

dahs moh-DAHL-vairp

das · noun

modal verb

das Kreuz

dahs KROYTS

das · noun

cross

10.1 WEIHNACHTEN: CHRISTMAS AND VERBS WITH E → I

Weihnachten

VY-nahkh-ten

noun (plural form)

Christmas

der Heiligabend

dehr HY-likh-ah-bent

der · noun

Christmas Eve

der Tannenbaum

dehr TAHN-nen-bowm

der · noun

fir tree, Christmas tree

die Kerze

dee KAIR-tsuh

die · noun

candle

das Geschenk

dahs guh-SHENK

das · noun

present

geben

GAY-ben

verb (e→i)

to give

nehmen

NAY-men

verb (e→i)

to take

es gibt

es GIPT

phrase

there is, there are

der Advent

dehr aht-VENT

der · noun

Advent

die Krippe

dee KRIP-puh

die · noun

manger

10.2 OSTERN: EASTER AND VERBS WITH E → IE AND A → Ä

Ostern
OH-stern

noun

Easter

der Karfreitag
dehr kar-FRY-tahk

der · noun

Good Friday

das Grab
dahs GRAHP

das · noun

tomb, grave

auferstehen
OWF-air-shtay-en

separable verb

to rise again

sehen
ZAY-en

verb (e → ie)

to see

lesen
LAY-zen

verb (e → ie)

to read

laufen
LOW-fen

verb (au → äu)

to run

schlafen
SHLAH-fen

verb (a → ä)

to sleep

das Osterei
dahs OH-ster-eye

das · noun

Easter egg

die Karwoche
dee KAR-vo-khuh

die · noun

Holy Week

10.3 DAS GLAUBENSBEKENNTNIS: WERDEN AND WISSEN

glauben an
GLOW-ben ahn

verb + accusative

to believe in

der Schöpfer
dehr SHÖP-fer

der · noun

Creator

allmächtig
ahl-MEKH-tikh
adjective
almighty

werden
VAIR-den
irregular verb
to become

wissen
VIS-sen
irregular verb
to know (a fact)

kennen
KEN-nen
verb
to know (a person, place)

bekennen
buh-KEN-nen
verb
to confess

der Himmel
dehr HIM-mel
der · noun
heaven, sky

die Kirche
dee KEER-khuh
die · noun
church

selig
ZAY-likh
adjective
blessed, saved

11.1 DAS PERFEKT MIT HABEN: REGULAR VERBS

das Perfekt
dahs per-FEKT
das · noun
present perfect tense

gestern
GES-tern
adverb
yesterday

gespielt
guh-SHPEELT
participle (spielen)
played

gemacht
guh-MAHKHT
participle (machen)
done, made

gekauft
guh-KOWFT
participle (kaufen)
bought

gearbeitet
guh-AR-by-tet
participle (arbeiten)
worked

besucht
buh-ZOOKHT
participle (besuchen)
visited

komponiert
kom-poh-NEERT
participle (komponieren)
composed

das Partizip
dahs par-tee-TSEEP
das · noun
participle

der Kampf
dehr KAHMPF
der · noun
fight

11.2 UNREGELMÄSSIGE PARTIZIPIEN: IRREGULAR PARTICIPLES

gesehen
guh-ZAY-en
participle (sehen)
seen

gegessen
guh-GES-sen
participle (essen)
eaten

getrunken
guh-TROON-ken
participle (trinken)
drunk

gesungen
guh-ZOONG-en
participle (singen)
sung

geschrieben
guh-SHREE-ben
participle (schreiben)
written

gesprochen
guh-SHPROKH-en
participle (sprechen)
spoken

gewusst
guh-VOOST
participle (wissen)
known

verstanden
fair-SHTAHN-den
participle (verstehen)
understood

das Wochenende
dahs VOKH-en-en-duh
das · noun
weekend

gebetet
guh-BAY-tet
participle (beten)
prayed

11.3 DAS PERFEKT MIT SEIN: MOTION AND CHANGE

gegangen
guh-GAHNG-en
participle (gehen)
gone

gekommen
guh-KOM-men
participle (kommen)
come

gefahren
guh-FAH-ren
participle (fahren)
driven, traveled

geflogen
guh-FLOH-gen
participle (fliegen)
flown

gelaufen
guh-LOW-fen
participle (laufen)
run

gewesen
guh-VAY-zen
participle (sein)
been

geblieben
guh-BLEE-ben
participle (bleiben)
stayed

geworden
guh-VOR-den
participle (werden)
become

geschwommen
guh-SHVOM-men
participle (schwimmen)
swum

gewandert
guh-VAHN-dert
participle (wandern)
hiked

12.1 DIE DEUTSCHSPRACHIGEN LÄNDER: COUNTRIES AND WORD ORDER

das Land
dahs LAHNT
das · noun
country

die Hauptstadt
dee HOWPT-shtaht
die · noun
capital

die Sprache
dee SHPRAH-khuh
die · noun
language

Österreich
ÖS-ter-ryekh
proper noun
Austria

die Schweiz
dee SHVITES
die · proper noun
Switzerland

Englisch
ENG-lish
noun
English (language)

woher
voh-HAIR
question word
from where

sprechen
SHPREKH-en
verb (e → i)
to speak

Deutschland
DOYCH-lahnt
proper noun
Germany

Liechtenstein
LIKH-ten-shtine
proper noun
Liechtenstein

12.2 LUTHER AUF DER WARTBURG: THE COMPARATIVE

größer
GRÖ-ser

comparative (groß)

bigger, taller

besser
BES-ser

comparative (gut)

better

mehr
MAIR

comparative (viel)

more

älter
EL-ter

comparative (alt)

older

als
AHLS

conjunction

than

so ... wie
ZOH ... VEE

phrase

as ... as

übersetzen
ü-ber-ZET-sen

verb

to translate

die Burg
dee BOORK

die · noun

castle, fortress

der Komparativ
dehr KOM-pah-rah-teef

der · noun

comparative

die Zuversicht
dee TSOO-fair-zikht

die · noun

refuge, confidence

12.3 DER, DIE, DAS BESTE: SUPERLATIVE, WAR AND HATTE, AND REVIEW

am größten
ahm GRÖS-ten

superlative (groß)

biggest

am besten
ahm BES-ten

superlative (gut)

best

der höchste
dehr HÖKH-stuh
superlative (hoch)
the highest

war
VAHR
past (sein)
was

hatte
HAHT-tuh
past (haben)
had

die Mauer
dee MOW-er
die · noun
wall

das Gebet
dahs guh-BAYT
das · noun
prayer

die Liebe
dee LEE-buh
die · noun
love, charity

der Superlativ
dehr ZOO-per-lah-teef
der · noun
superlative

die Hoffnung
dee HOF-noong
die · noun
hope

UNIT 1

Guten Tag! Grüssen, Buchstaben, Zahlen

Lesson 1.1 opens the year with greetings and courtesy: Guten Morgen, Guten Tag, Guten Abend, Hallo, Tschüss, Auf Wiedersehen, Wie geht es Ihnen?, bitte, danke, and the choice every German speaker makes many times a day between du (familiar) and Sie (respectful). Richter's painting of a village wedding walking out of the spring woods shows a whole community greeting one another, and Ruth 2:4 gives the greeting of Boaz and his reapers: Der HERR mit euch! — Der HERR segne dich!

Lesson 1.2 lays the foundation of sound: the 26 letters and their German names, the umlauts, ß, the sounds of ei and ie, ch and sch, w, v, z and the German r, with John 1:1 as the first verse read aloud in German. Lesson 1.3 counts from null to hundert, with the German habit of saying the ones before the tens (einundzwanzig), asks Wie alt bist du? and Wie ist deine Telefonnummer?, and reads Genesis 1:5: der erste Tag.

PREREQUISITES

- None. German I assumes no German. Students who finished the School Launch Grade 5–8 German courses will know much of Units 1–6 and can move through them faster, spending the saved weeks on reading.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can greet and take leave politely at any time of day, and choose du or Sie correctly.
- ☐ I can say the German alphabet and spell my name aloud.
- ☐ I can read German words aloud with umlauts, ß, ei, ie, ch and the other main sounds.
- ☐ I can count from 0 to 100 and ask and answer Wie alt bist du?
- ☐ I can read Ruth 2:4 and John 1:1 aloud in the Luther Bible.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

1.1	**Guten Tag: Greetings, du and Sie**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
1.2	**Das Alphabet: Letters and Sounds**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
1.3	**Die Zahlen: Numbers 0 to 100**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 1 test

Unit 1 test. Questions 1–3 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written.

50 points.

1. 5 pts

   Oral: Greet the parent as you would at 8 a.m. and at 7 p.m., ask how he or she is (Sie), and take leave.

2. 5 pts

   Oral: Spell your full name aloud with German letter names.

3. 5 pts

   Oral: Read John 1:1 aloud: Im Anfang war das Wort, und das Wort war bei Gott, und Gott war das Wort.

4. 5 pts

   Du or Sie with: (a) your little brother, (b) the pastor, (c) a shopkeeper you have never met, (d) your best friend, (e) your dog?

5. 5 pts

   Write in German: Good day, Mrs. Becker. How are you? Very well, thank you. And you?

6. 5 pts

   Write the four special German letters and a word with each.

7. 5 pts

   How are these pronounced? Wein, Wien, Vater, Zoo, ich.

8. 5 pts

   Write in German words: 7, 12, 16, 21, 99.

9. 5 pts

   Answer in German: Wie alt bist du? Wie viele Tage hat der April?

10. 5 pts

    Copy Ruth 2:4 from Der HERR mit euch to the end, and translate it.

ANSWER KEY

1. Guten Morgen! … Guten Abend! Wie geht es Ihnen? … Auf Wiedersehen!
2. Each letter named the German way (ah, beh, tseh, deh, eh, eff, geh, hah, ee, yot, kah …).
3. W as English v (war, Wort), ei as in eye (bei), clear final t; graded on steady, clear reading.
4. (a) du, (b) Sie, (c) Sie, (d) du, (e) du.
5. Guten Tag, Frau Becker. Wie geht es Ihnen? Sehr gut, danke. Und Ihnen?
6. ä (Mädchen), ö (schön), ü (Tür), ß (Straße).
7. Wein (VINE), Wien (VEEN), Vater (FAH-ter), Zoo (TSOH), ich (soft ch as in a whispered hue).
8. sieben, zwölf, sechzehn, einundzwanzig, neunundneunzig.
9. Ich bin ___ Jahre alt. Der April hat dreißig Tage.
10. Der HERR mit euch! Sie antworteten: Der HERR segne dich! The LORD be with you. And they answered him, The LORD bless thee.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: DER BESUCH (THE VISIT)

Welcome a guest (a parent playing a visitor, a grandparent, or a German-speaking neighbor) in German from the door to the table: greet with the right time of day and Sie, introduce yourself and spell your name, offer a seat (Bitte, nehmen Sie Platz), ask the guest's telephone number and write it down in German numbers, offer something to drink (Möchten Sie Wasser?), and take leave with Auf Wiedersehen.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Courtesy	Greetings, bitte, danke, bitte schön and leave-taking are used naturally.
Du and Sie	Sie forms are used consistently with the guest.
Sounds	Umlauts, ei/ie, ch and w are pronounced carefully.
Numbers	Reads and writes a telephone number correctly.

1.1 Guten Tag: Greetings, du and Sie

OBJECTIVES

- Greet and take leave at any time of day: Guten Morgen, Guten Tag, Guten Abend, Gute Nacht, Hallo, Tschüss, Auf Wiedersehen.
- Ask and answer Wie geht es Ihnen? / Wie geht es dir? / Wie geht's? and use bitte, danke, bitte schön and Entschuldigung.
- Choose between du and Sie and explain the choice.
- Describe Richter's Bridal Procession in Spring and what it shows about community.

> **Warm-up.** How do you greet your grandparents? Your best friend? A police officer? English once had two words for you, thou for family and friends and you for respect; the King James Bible still uses both. German still does, every day. Today you learn when to use each.

WATCH

German Dialogues for Beginners: Wie geht es dir? - Wie heißt du? - A1 [with Julia, Sascha & Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 4:25

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DnMIzRE7rB8

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraphs. Pause after each line of dialogue and say it back.

Note: lingoni GERMAN teachers act out short beginner dialogues: Wie geht es dir? Wie heißt du?, about four and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn German - German in Three Minutes - Greetings in German

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 3:22

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=aZJhkghsWGM

Session 2 or 3: a quick review of greetings.

KEY TERMS

Guten Tag / Guten Abend

Good day / good evening (GOO-ten TAHK / GOO-ten AH-bent).

Hallo / Tschüss

Hi / bye: friendly and informal (HAH-loh / CHÜSS).

du / Sie

You: du for one friend, child or family member; Sie (always capitalized) for respect, to one or more people.

bitte / danke

Please, you're welcome / thank you (BIT-tuh / DAHN-kuh).

Entschuldigung

Excuse me; sorry (ent-SHOOL-dee-goong).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

Guten Morgen
GOO-ten MOR-gen
greeting
good morning

Guten Tag
GOO-ten TAHK
greeting
good day; hello

Guten Abend
GOO-ten AH-bent
greeting
good evening

Auf Wiedersehen
owf VEE-der-zay-en
phrase
goodbye

Tschüss
CHÜSS
phrase
bye (informal)

Herr / Frau
HAIR / FROW
title
Mr. / Mrs., Ms.

Wie geht es Ihnen?
vee GAYT es EE-nen
phrase
How are you? (formal)

Entschuldigung
ent-SHOOL-dee-goong
die · phrase
excuse me; sorry

bitte
BIT-tuh
adverb
please; you’re welcome

danke
DAHN-kuh
interjection
thank you

CORE IDEAS

The story. In 1847 the Dresden painter Ludwig Richter finished a large painting of a village wedding in spring. Out of a deep beech wood comes the bridal pair, the bride in a long pink gown with a wreath in her hair, followed by her family and friends. Ahead of them, children run over a little wooden bridge with garlands and a barking dog, and on the hill a shepherd boy jumps up and waves his hat to greet them. Far

away on the left a castle stands on a hill, and at the right, through the trees, rises a church spire. Richter loved ordinary German village life, and this painting is a picture of a whole community: old and young, family and neighbors, greeting a new household on its way from the church.

How German works: greetings. Say **Guten Morgen** until about ten or eleven in the morning, **Guten Tag** during the day, and **Guten Abend** in the evening; **Gute Nacht** is only for bedtime. In the south of Germany and in Austria you will hear **Grüß Gott** (God greet you), and in Switzerland **Grüezi**. To friends: **Hallo!** To leave: **Auf Wiedersehen** (until we see again), **Tschüss** (bye, informal), **Bis bald** (see you soon), **Bis morgen** (see you tomorrow). Add the title: **Guten Tag, Herr Müller. Guten Abend, Frau Schmidt.** All German nouns are capitalized: der Tag, der Abend, die Nacht.

How German works: du and Sie. Du is for one person you know well: a family member, a friend, a child, a pet, and God in prayer. **Sie**, always with a capital S, is for adults you do not know well and anyone older or in authority. So: **Wie geht es dir? Wie geht's?** to a friend, but **Wie geht es Ihnen?** to the doctor. Answers: **Sehr gut, danke. Gut. Es geht. Nicht so gut.** And back: **Und dir? / Und Ihnen?**

Courtesy words. Bitte means please, and also you're welcome and here you are. **Danke** (thank you), **Danke schön**, **Vielen Dank**; the answer is **Bitte schön** or **Gern geschehen**. **Entschuldigung** (excuse me, sorry). When Boaz came to his fields, he greeted his reapers: **Der HERR mit euch!** and they answered: **Der HERR segne dich!** A greeting can be a blessing.

PICTURE STUDY



Bridal Procession in a Spring Landscape, Ludwig Richter, 1847 · Oil on canvas · Galerie Neue Meister, Dresden

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Ludwig Richter (1803–1884) was one of the best-loked German painters and illustrators of the 1800s, famous for his gentle pictures of village life, fairy tales and hymns. The Bridal Procession now hangs in the Galerie Neue Meister in Dresden. The painting is full of greetings: the boy waving from the hill, the children running ahead, the guests walking together. Notice how the tiny people are framed by the huge trees, as if the whole of creation were celebrating with them.

Look closely

- Find the bride and groom. What colors are they wearing?
- Find the shepherd boy waving his hat. Whom is he greeting?
- Find the children on the bridge. What are they carrying?
- Find the castle and the church spire.

Talk about it

1. Which people here would say du to each other, and who might say Sie?
2. Why do you think Richter made the trees so large and the people so small?

ACTIVITY

Greeting role-plays

Act out six short greeting scenes, choosing du or Sie each time.

You will need

- Your German notebook
- Index cards

Steps

1. Write six situations on cards: meeting the pastor after church, a friend at the park, a baker at 8 a.m., a grandmother at 7 p.m., a new neighbor, a little cousin at bedtime.
2. Draw a card and act out the scene with a parent: greet with the right word for the time of day, ask how the person is, answer, and take leave.
3. Decide before each scene: du or Sie? Explain why.
4. Write the best scene in your notebook as a four-line dialogue.

Tips

- Add a southern scene with Grüß Gott and a Swiss one with Grüezi.
- Add a bakery scene: Guten Morgen! Zwei Brötchen, bitte. — Bitte schön. — Danke, tschüss!

Check your work

☐ I used Guten Morgen, Guten Tag and Guten Abend at the right times.

☐ I chose du or Sie correctly in all six scenes.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the greetings and leave-takings with their meanings.
2. Make a two-column chart: du (How are you? And you?) and Sie (the same).
3. Copy Ruth 2:4 from Der HERR mit euch in German and English.

> **From history.** English and German are close cousins: hello and hallo, good and gut, day and Tag, night and Nacht. Gesundheit (health), said after a sneeze, came into American English from German immigrants.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can greet each other only in German for a week, at the door and at the table, and practice using Sie with guests.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Greet your teacher at 10 a.m. and ask how she is.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Daytime: Guten Tag (or Guten Morgen before ten).
2. A teacher: Sie, so Ihnen.

Answer: Guten Tag, Frau Weber. Wie geht es Ihnen?

Example 2. A friend asks: Wie geht’s? Answer and ask back.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Answer with gut or sehr gut and danke.
2. With a friend: und dir?

Answer: Gut, danke. Und dir?

Example 3. Thank a shopkeeper and answer his thank-you.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Danke or vielen Dank.
2. The answer: bitte schön.

Answer: Vielen Dank! — Bitte schön!

PRACTICE

1. Easy Say good evening in German.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Guten Abend.

2. Easy Say goodbye formally and informally.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Auf Wiedersehen. Tschüss.

3. Easy Say excuse me.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Entschuldigung.

4. Medium Du or Sie: your cat, your doctor, your grandmother?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Du, Sie, du (most families use du with grandparents).

5. Medium Translate: Excuse me, Mr. Braun. Where is the church?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Entschuldigung, Herr Braun. Wo ist die Kirche?

6. Medium Is Hallo, wie geht's? right for greeting a police officer? Why or why not?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   No: it is informal. Say Guten Tag. Wie geht es Ihnen?

7. Hard Write a four-line dialogue between a boy and his grandfather at 8 p.m.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Guten Abend, Opa! — Guten Abend, mein Junge. Wie geht es dir? — Sehr gut, danke. Und dir? — Auch gut.

8. Hard Why does Sie need a capital letter, and what does sie (small s) mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Capital Sie is the polite you; small sie means she or they.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Gute Nacht as a greeting. It is only for going to bed; say Guten Abend.

- Using du with adults you do not know. Use Sie and the title.
- Writing sie for polite you. The polite Sie and Ihnen are always capitalized.

> **Make it a game · Grüß-Staffel.** The parent calls out a time and a person (8 Uhr, der Bäcker! 21 Uhr, deine Schwester!); the student answers instantly with the right greeting, title, and du or Sie question. Three right in a row earns a point; switch roles after ten.

> **Scripture.** "And, behold, Boaz came from Bethlehem, and said unto the reapers, The LORD be with you. And they answered him, The LORD bless thee." (Ruth 2:4, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Der HERR mit euch! Sie antworteten: Der HERR segne dich!* Boaz greets his reapers with a blessing, and they bless him back. In Luther's German: Der HERR mit euch! — Der HERR segne dich!

UNIT 1 · GUTEN TAG! GRÜSSEN, BUCHSTABEN, ZAHLEN · LESSON 1.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

1.2 Das Alphabet: Letters and Sounds

OBJECTIVES

- Say the 26 letters of the German alphabet and spell words aloud.
- Pronounce ä, ö, ü and ß.
- Apply the main sound rules: ei and ie, w, v, z, j, s, ch and sch, and the German r.
- Read John 1:1 aloud in German.

> **Warm-up.** English spelling is full of surprises: though, through, tough, cough. German spelling is much more regular: once you know the rules, you can read almost any German word aloud, even one you have never seen. Today you learn the system.

WATCH

Learn the ABC in German - A1 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 9:11

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hEzHhX8GeqQ

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on the letters. Say each letter after Jenny.

Note: lingoni GERMAN teaches the German alphabet, about nine minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn how to pronounce the letters "ch" and "sch" in German - Lesson for Beginners - A1 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 7:20

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1rnPFloFiX0

Session 2 or 3: the two hardest sounds for English speakers, ch and sch.

KEY TERMS

das Alphabet
The alphabet (dahs ahl-fah-BAYT).

der Buchstabe
The letter of the alphabet (dehr BOOKH-shtah-buh).

der Umlaut
The two dots over ä, ö, ü that change the vowel (dehr OOM-lowt).

das Eszett (ß)
The sharp s, spoken like ss (dahs es-TSET).

buchstabieren
To spell (aloud) (bookh-shtah-BEE-ren).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

das Alphabet

dahs ahl-fah-BAYT

das · noun

alphabet

der Buchstabe

dehr BOOKH-shtah-buh

der · noun

letter

buchstabieren

bookh-shtah-BEE-ren

verb

to spell

das Wort

dahs VORT

das · noun

word

der Anfang

dehr AHN-fahng

der · noun

beginning

die Straße

dee SHTRAH-suh

die · noun

street

schön

SHÖN

adjective

beautiful; nice

wie, bitte?

vee BIT-tuh

phrase

pardon? (asking to repeat)

der Umlaut

dehr OOM-lowt

der · noun

umlaut (ä, ö, ü)

das Eszett

dahs es-TSET

das · noun

the letter ß

CORE IDEAS

The story. When Martin Luther translated the Bible, Germany was a patchwork of dialects: a man from Hamburg and a man from Munich could barely understand each other. Luther chose words that people across the land would understand, and his Bible, printed by the hundreds of thousands, helped create one written German for everyone. He said that to find the right word he went and listened to the mother in the house, the children in the street and the common man in the market. German spelling has been reformed several times since, most recently in 1996, but the sound of the language you are about to learn owes much to Luther's ear.

How German works: the letters. **a** (ah), **b** (beh), **c** (tseh), **d** (deh), **e** (eh), **f** (eff), **g** (geh), **h** (hah), **i** (ee), **j** (yot), **k** (kah), **l** (ell), **m** (emm), **n** (enn), **o** (oh), **p** (peh), **q** (koo), **r** (err), **s** (ess), **t** (teh), **u** (oo), **v** (fow), **w** (veh), **x** (iks), **y** (ÜP-see-lon), **z** (tset). Then the extras: **ä** (like e in bed), **ö** (say ay with rounded lips), **ü** (say ee with rounded lips), and **ß** (a sharp ss: Straße, groß).

How German works: the sound rules. **ei** sounds like English eye (mein, Wein, bei); **ie** sounds like ee (Liebe, Wien, Brief) — read the second letter. **w** sounds like English v (Wort, was); **v** usually like f (Vater, viel); **z** like ts (Zeit, zehn); **j** like y (ja, Jesus); **s** before a vowel like z (Sonne, sehen); **sp** and **st** at the start of a word like shp and sht (Sport, Stein); **sch** like sh (Schule). **ch** after a, o, u is a throaty sound like clearing the throat gently (Bach, Buch); after other letters it is a soft hiss, like a whispered h in hue (ich, Licht). **eu** and **äu** sound like oy (heute, Häuser). The German **r** is made in the back of the throat. Final b, d, g sound like p, t, k (Kind sounds like kint).

Read it aloud. Im Anfang war das Wort, und das Wort war bei Gott, und Gott war das Wort. (John 1:1) Notice: war and Wort begin with a v sound; bei rhymes with eye; Anfang has a clear a as in father.

ACTIVITY

Alphabet and sound posters

Make an illustrated German alphabet with a sound rule poster.

You will need

- Large paper or 30 index cards
- Markers and colored pencils

Steps

1. Write each letter (including ä, ö, ü, ß) with its German name.
2. Add a German word that begins with (or contains) the letter, and a picture: A — der Apfel; Ä — der Bär (contains ä).
3. Make a second poster of the sound rules: ei/ie, w, v, z, sch, ch, eu.
4. Spell your full name, your town and your pastor's name aloud to a parent.

Tips

- Record yourself reading John 1:1 and compare with a native speaker online.
- Make a list of ten German names (Bach, Dürer, Luther, Händel…) and read them aloud.

Check your work

- ☐ My alphabet has all 30 letters with names and words.
- ☐ I can spell my name aloud in German.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the alphabet with the German names.
2. Copy the sound rules with two example words each.
3. Copy John 1:1 in German and English, and mark every w, ei and ch.

> **From history.** The letter ß grew out of an old way of writing s and z (or two s's) together. Switzerland and Liechtenstein no longer use it and write ss instead, and since 2017 there is even an official capital ß.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can read one verse of the Luther Bible aloud each evening this week, with the student reading after the parent.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Spell Bach aloud in German.

▼ **Show solution**

1. B is beh, a is ah, c is tseh, h is hah.

Answer: beh – ah – tseh – hah.

Example 2. How do you say Wein and Wien?

▼ **Show solution**

1. ei: read the first vowel name in English: eye.
2. ie: ee.

Answer: Wein = VINE (wine); Wien = VEEN (Vienna).

Example 3. How do you say Straße?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Initial st sounds sht; ß sounds ss; final e is spoken.

Answer: SHTRAH-suh.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is the German name of the letter w?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Veh.

2. Easy How is ß pronounced?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Like ss.

3. Easy How is z pronounced?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Like ts.

4. Medium Pronounce: Liebe, mein, vier, Zeit.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   LEE-buh, MINE, FEER, TSITE.

5. Medium Which ch is in ich and which in Buch?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich has the soft ch (whispered hue); Buch has the throaty ch.

6. Medium Spell Luther aloud in German.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   ell – oo – teh – hah – eh – err.

7. Hard Read aloud and explain three sound rules: Im Anfang war das Wort.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   W sounds like v (war, Wort); a is like a in father; the ng in Anfang is one nasal sound, as in English sing, with no k.

8. Hard Why does Kind sound like kint?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   A final d sounds like t in German (final b, d, g are hardened).

COMMON MISTAKES

- Reading ie like eye. Read the second letter: ie = ee, ei = eye.
- Saying w like English w. German w is like English v.
- Forgetting the umlaut: schon (already) and schön (beautiful) are different words.

> **Make it a game · Buchstabier-Duell.** The parent says an English word with a German twin (Haus, Hand, Name, Mutter, Wasser); the student spells the German word aloud with German letter names. A correct spelling earns a point; a mistake gives the parent a turn to spell.

> **Scripture.** “In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.” (John 1:1, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Im Anfang war das Wort, und das Wort war bei Gott, und Gott war das Wort.* John begins his Gospel with the eternal Word, who became flesh in Jesus Christ. It is the first verse you read aloud in German.

UNIT 1 · GUTEN TAG! GRÜSSEN, BUCHSTABEN, ZAHLEN · LESSON 1.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

1.3 Die Zahlen: Numbers 0 to 100

OBJECTIVES

- Count from 0 to 100 in German.
- Say the ones before the tens: einundzwanzig.
- Ask and answer Wie alt bist du? and Wie ist deine Telefonnummer?
- Read Genesis 1:5 aloud in German.

> **Warm-up.** Count to ten in English. Now think of the old nursery rhyme four-and-twenty blackbirds: English once put the ones before the tens too. German still does, all the way to ninety-nine.

WATCH

Learn numbers from 1-20 in German - A1 [with Jacqueline]

lingoni GERMAN · 9:18

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wXBFj732YzM

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on 0–20. Count along.

Note: lingoni GERMAN teaches the numbers 1 to 20, about nine minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn German - German in Three Minutes - Numbers 11-100

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 5:53

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=juXWp1DT-_k

Session 2 or 3: the numbers from 11 to 100.

KEY TERMS

die Zahl
The number (dee TSAHL).

zählen
To count (TSAY-len).

Wie alt bist du?
How old are you? (vee AHLT bist doo)

Wie viele?
How many? (vee FEE-luh)

die Telefonnummer
The telephone number (dee teh-leh-FOHN-noom-mer).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

die Zahl
dee TSAHL
die · noun
number

zählen
TSAY-len
verb
to count

zwanzig
TSVAHN-tsikh
number
twenty

dreißig
DRY-sikh
number
thirty

hundert
HOON-dert
number
hundred

das Jahr
dahs YAHR
das · noun
year

alt
AHLT
adjective
old

wie viele
vee FEE-luh
question
how many

die Telefonnummer
dee teh-leh-FOHN-noom-mer
die · noun
telephone number

siebzehn
ZEEP-tsayn
number
seventeen

CORE IDEAS

The story. On the first day of creation God said, Let there be light, and there was light; and He divided the light from the darkness. Moses wrote: **Da ward aus Abend und Morgen der erste Tag** (and the evening and the morning were the first day). Day by day, God counted out the work of creation: der erste, der zweite, der dritte Tag … until on the seventh day He rested. Numbers are part of the order God built into His world, and Germans have always loved order: their numbers are some of the most regular in Europe.

How German works: 0 to 20. null, eins, zwei, drei, vier, fünf, sechs, sieben, acht, neun, zehn, elf, zwölf; then the teens add -zehn: **dreizehn, vierzehn, fünfzehn, sechzehn** (drops the s), **siebzehn** (drops -en), **achtzehn, neunzehn, zwanzig.** On the telephone, Germans often say **zwo** for zwei so it is not confused with drei.

How German works: 21 to 100. The tens: **zwanzig, dreißig** (with ß!), **vierzig, fünfzig, sechzig, siebzig, achtzig, neunzig, hundert.** Between them, say the ones first, then und, then the tens, all in one word: **einundzwanzig** (one-and-twenty, 21), **zweiunddreißig** (32), **siebenundvierzig** (47), **neunundneunzig** (99). Eins loses its s before und: einundzwanzig.

Using numbers. Wie alt bist du? — Ich bin fünfzehn Jahre alt. Wie alt sind Sie? (to an adult, though it may be impolite to ask!) **Wie viele Tage hat die Woche? — Sieben. Wie ist deine Telefonnummer? — Null, sieben, eins ...** Germans often read phone numbers in pairs: 47 11 = siebenundvierzig, elf.

ACTIVITY

Family number book

Make a small book of the important numbers in your family's life, written out in German words.

You will need

- Paper folded into a booklet
- Markers

Steps

1. On each page write a number fact: Ich bin vierzehn Jahre alt. Mein Vater ist zweiundvierzig. Wir haben zwei Hunde.
2. Include ages, the house number, the number of people, the number of steps on your stairs, and one Bible number (the seven days, the twelve apostles).
3. Write every number in German words and in figures.
4. Read the book aloud to the family.

Tips

- Add a page with your phone number read in pairs.
- Count the books on one shelf in German.

Check your work

☐ My book has at least eight number facts in German words.

☐ I can read every number aloud without looking at the figures.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Write the numbers 0–20 and the tens to 100 in words.
2. Write ten numbers between 21 and 99 in words.
3. Copy Genesis 1:5 in German and English.

> **From history.** Germans write a comma where English uses a decimal point and a point where English uses a comma: 1.000 is one thousand and 2,5 is two and a half. They also cross the 7 and write 1 with a long upstroke.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can count everything in German this week: stairs, plates, steps on a walk.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Write 34 in German.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ones first: vier; then und; then the tens: dreißig.

Answer: vierunddreißig

Example 2. Write 61 in German.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Eins loses its s before und: ein.
2. Sixty: sechzig.

Answer: einundsechzig

Example 3. Answer: Wie alt bist du? (15)

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ich bin + number + Jahre alt.

Answer: Ich bin fünfzehn Jahre alt.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Count from one to ten in German.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   eins, zwei, drei, vier, fünf, sechs, sieben, acht, neun, zehn.

2. Easy What is zwölf?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   12.

3. Easy Write 30 in German.

▼ **Show answer**

dreißig.

4. Medium Write 17 and 70.

▼ **Show answer**

siebzehn, siebzig.

5. Medium Write 85 and 98.

▼ **Show answer**

fünfundachtzig, achtundneunzig.

6. Medium Ask a friend how old he is, and ask an adult.

▼ **Show answer**

Wie alt bist du? Wie alt sind Sie?

7. Hard Read the phone number 0711 47 23 in pairs.

▼ **Show answer**

Null, sieben, elf; siebenundvierzig; dreiundzwanzig.

8. Hard How many days does the Bible count in Genesis 1, and how do you say the seventh day?

▼ **Show answer**

Seven; der siebte Tag.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying the tens first: zwanzigeins. Say the ones first: einundzwanzig.
- Writing dreizig. Thirty is dreißig, with ß.
- Saying eins und zwanzig. Use ein and write it as one word: einundzwanzig.

> **Make it a game · Zahlen-Ping-Pong.** Count aloud with a parent, taking turns: eins! — zwei! — drei! On every number with a 7 in it or divisible by 7, say Halleluja instead, and the next person continues. A mistake starts the count again; reach hundert to win.

> **Scripture.** “And God called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. And the evening and the morning were the first day.” (Genesis 1:5, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Da ward aus Abend und Morgen der erste Tag.* God names the day and the night and counts the first day of creation. Luther wrote ward, an old form of wurde (became).

UNIT 2

Ich bin: sein und Personalpronomen

Lesson 2.1 teaches the subject pronouns ich, du, er, sie, es, wir, ihr, sie and Sie and the irregular verb sein (ich bin, du bist, er ist …), with Holbein’s portrait of Erasmus of Rotterdam, whose Greek New Testament Luther used for his translation, and Exodus 3:14.

Lesson 2.2 asks Woher kommst du? and Wo wohnst du?, names countries and languages, and introduces the regular present-tense endings with kommen, wohnen and sprechen, with Acts 2:8. Lesson 2.3 describes people with adjectives after sein (Er ist groß und freundlich), negates with nicht, and forms questions with verb first or a W-word, with Psalm 139:14.

PREREQUISITES

- Unit 1.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can use all the subject pronouns and conjugate sein.
- ☐ I can say where I come from and live and what languages I speak.
- ☐ I can describe people with at least fifteen adjectives.
- ☐ I can negate with nicht and ask yes-no and W-questions.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

2.1	**Ich bin, du bist: Pronouns and sein**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
2.2	**Woher kommst du? Countries and Languages**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
2.3	**Wie ist er? Describing People and Asking Questions**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 2 test

Unit 2 test. Questions 1–2 are oral. 50 points.

1. 5 pts
   Oral: Introduce yourself in five sentences: name, age, where you come from, where you live, what languages you speak.
2. 5 pts
   Oral: Describe a family member in three sentences with adjectives.
3. 5 pts
   Conjugate sein in all forms.
4. 5 pts
   Fill in sein: Wir ___ müde. ___ du krank? Ihr ___ nett. Das Haus ___ alt. Sie (formal) ___ Herr Lang?
5. 5 pts
   Conjugate kommen for ich, du, er, wir, ihr.

6. **5 pts**

   Write: She comes from Austria and speaks German. We live in Texas.

7. **5 pts**

   Give the opposite: groß, alt, schön, schnell, fleißig.

8. **5 pts**

   Make negative with nicht: Das Buch ist interessant. Er ist müde.

9. **5 pts**

   Make questions: (a) yes-no: Du bist Amerikaner. (b) W-question asking where she lives.

10. **5 pts**

    Who was Erasmus and why does he matter to Luther's Bible?

ANSWER KEY

1. Ich heiße ___. Ich bin ___ Jahre alt. Ich komme aus ___. Ich wohne in ___. Ich spreche Englisch und ein bisschen Deutsch.
2. For example: Mein Vater ist groß. Er ist sehr freundlich. Er ist nicht alt.
3. ich bin, du bist, er/sie/es ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie/Sie sind.
4. sind, Bist, seid, ist, Sind.
5. ich komme, du kommst, er kommt, wir kommen, ihr kommt.
6. Sie kommt aus Österreich und spricht Deutsch. Wir wohnen in Texas.
7. klein, jung (or neu), hässlich, langsam, faul.
8. Das Buch ist nicht interessant. Er ist nicht müde.
9. (a) Bist du Amerikaner? (b) Wo wohnt sie?
10. A Dutch scholar who published the Greek New Testament in 1516; Luther translated the New Testament into German from Erasmus's Greek text.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: EIN STECKBRIEF (A PROFILE)

Make illustrated profiles (Steckbriefe) of yourself and two people you admire, one from your family and one from history or the Bible, in German: name, age (or dates), where they come from and live, languages, three to five adjectives describing them, and one sentence about why you admire them. Present them aloud.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Sein	All forms of sein are correct.
Facts	Origin, home and languages correctly stated.
Adjectives	At least twelve different adjectives.
Delivery	Presented aloud with clear pronunciation.

UNIT 2 · ICH BIN: SEIN UND PERSONALPRONOMEN · LESSON 2.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

2.1 Ich bin, du bist: Pronouns and sein

OBJECTIVES

- Use the subject pronouns ich, du, er, sie, es, wir, ihr, sie and Sie.
- Conjugate sein in the present tense.
- Say who and what people are: Ich bin Schüler. Das ist Erasmus.
- Study Holbein’s portrait of Erasmus.

> **Warm-up.** What are the most common words in any language? I, you, he, she, and the little verb to be. In German, as in English, to be is irregular. When Moses asked God His name, God answered with this very verb.

WATCH

The verb "to be" in German - A1 [with Jacqueline]

lingoni GERMAN · 8:56

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=agfZvQcHMSc

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on sein. Write the chart as Jacqueline gives it.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the verb sein (to be), about nine minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

SEIN in the Present Tense - Mastering German Verbs

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 2:31

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5nXjtgWPtfI

Session 2: a quick drill of sein in the present tense.

KEY TERMS

sein
To be (ZINE).

das Pronomen
The pronoun (dahs pro-NOH-men).

der Gelehrte
The scholar (dehr guh-LAIR-tuh).

der Schüler / die Schülerin
The (male / female) student (SHÜ-ler / SHÜ-leh-rin).

Das ist…
This is… / That is… (dahs IST).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

ich
IKH
pronoun
I

du
DOO
pronoun
you (familiar)

er / sie / es
AIR / ZEE / ESS
pronouns
he / she / it

wir
VEER
pronoun
we

ihr
EER
pronoun
you (plural, familiar)

Sie
ZEE
pronoun
you (polite)

sein
ZINE
verb (irregular)
to be

der Lehrer
dehr LAY-rer
der · noun
teacher (a woman: die Lehrerin)

der Schüler
dehr SHÜ-ler
der · noun
pupil, student (a girl: die Schülerin)

das Pronomen
dahs proh-NOH-men
das · noun
pronoun

CORE IDEAS

The story. Desiderius Erasmus was born in Rotterdam in the Netherlands about 1466 and became the most famous scholar in Europe. He loved the ancient languages and believed that ordinary Christians should read the Gospels for themselves; he wished that the farmer at his plow and the weaver at his loom would sing from Scripture. In 1516, in the Swiss city of Basel, he published the New Testament in its original Greek, printed for the first time, beside his own Latin translation. Five years later, hidden in the Wartburg, Martin Luther translated the New Testament into German

from Erasmus's Greek text. In 1523 the young painter Hans Holbein, who lived in Basel, painted Erasmus at his desk, writing.

How German works: the pronouns. ich (I, small letter!), **du** (you, one friend), **er** (he), **sie** (she), **es** (it), **wir** (we), **ihr** (you, a group of friends or family), **sie** (they), **Sie** (you, polite, one or more). Er, sie and es also mean it for things, by their gender: der Tisch → er; die Lampe → sie; das Buch → es.

How German works: sein. ich bin, du bist, er/sie/es ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie/Sie sind. Ich bin Schüler. Du bist nett. Er ist Gelehrter. Wir sind Amerikaner. Ihr seid Freunde. Sie sind Lehrer. With a job or nationality, German leaves out the a: Ich bin Schüler (I am a student). For a female: Schülerin, Lehrerin, Amerikanerin.

God's name. When Moses asked God at the burning bush what His name was, God answered: I AM THAT I AM. Luther translated: **ICH WERDE SEIN, DER ICH SEIN WERDE** (I will be who I will be). God simply is, and always will be. Jesus used the same words: **Ich bin** das Brot des Lebens, **ich bin** das Licht der Welt, **ich bin** der gute Hirte.

PICTURE STUDY



Erasmus of Rotterdam, Hans Holbein the Younger, 1523 · Oil on panel · Musée du Louvre, Paris

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Hans Holbein the Younger (about 1497–1543) was born in Augsburg and worked in Basel before becoming court painter to Henry VIII of England. He painted Erasmus several times; Erasmus sent these portraits to friends across Europe. Holbein shows him not as a lord but as a worker: all his attention is on the pen and the page. The dark clothes and quiet colors put all the light on his face and hands, the tools of a scholar.

Look closely

- What is Erasmus doing?
- Find his pen and his ring.
- What is behind him?
- Why might Holbein paint him in profile?

Talk about it

1. Describe Erasmus in German with sein and three adjectives.
2. Why did Erasmus want ordinary people to read the Bible?

ACTIVITY

Who is who? Picture cards

Make picture cards of family members and famous people and introduce them with sein.

You will need

- Photos or drawings of ten people (family, friends, historical figures)
- Index cards

Steps

1. Glue or draw one person on each card.
2. On the back write two sentences with sein: Das ist mein Bruder. Er ist zwölf Jahre alt. / Das ist Erasmus. Er ist Gelehrter.
3. Use every pronoun at least once: write sentences about two people together (Sie sind…), yourself (Ich bin…), and you and a friend (Wir sind…).
4. Present the cards to the family.

Tips

- Add Jesus' I am sayings in German on a card.
- Make a card for Holbein: Er ist Maler. Er ist aus Augsburg.

Check your work

☐ I used all forms of sein correctly.

☐ I used er, sie, es and sie (they) correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the pronoun chart and the sein chart.
2. Write eight sentences with sein, one for each person.
3. Copy Exodus 3:14 in German and English.

> **From history.** Holbein's 1523 portrait was painted in Basel, where Erasmus lived for many years. Erasmus is buried in Basel Minster, and his Greek New Testament went through five editions in his lifetime.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can read Jesus' seven I am sayings in John in the Luther Bible and copy them into the notebook.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: We are students.

▼ **Show solution**

1. wir → sind.
2. No word for a; plural: Schüler.

Answer: Wir sind Schüler.

Example 2. Say: Are you (formal) Mrs. Klein?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Polite you: Sie sind; question: verb first.

Answer: Sind Sie Frau Klein?

Example 3. Replace the noun with a pronoun: Das Buch ist alt.

▼ **Show solution**

1. das Buch is neuter → es.

Answer: Es ist alt.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is the ich form of sein?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   bin.

2. Easy What is the wir form?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   sind.

3. Easy What does ihr mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   You (a group of friends or family).

4. Medium Fill in: Du ___ nett. Ihr ___ müde. Er ___ Lehrer.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   bist, seid, ist.

5. Medium Say: She is a teacher. (female)

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Sie ist Lehrerin.

6. Medium Which pronoun replaces die Lampe? der Tisch?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   sie; er.

7. Hard Translate Exodus 3:14a from Luther: ICH WERDE SEIN, DER ICH SEIN WERDE.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   I will be who I will be (KJV: I AM THAT I AM).

8. Hard Say: Jesus says: I am the light of the world.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Jesus sagt: Ich bin das Licht der Welt.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing Ich with a capital in the middle of a sentence. Ich is small; Sie (polite) is capitalized.
- Saying Ich bin ein Schüler. With jobs and nationalities, leave out ein: Ich bin Schüler.
- Mixing ihr (you all) and Ihr (your, polite) and ihr (her). Context tells which.

Make it a game · Pronomen-Blitz. The parent points: at the student (du!), at self (ich!), at a brother (er!), at two people (sie!), at the whole family (ihr!). The student must instantly say the pronoun and the right form of sein with an adjective: Du bist nett! Ten in a row wins.

Scripture. "And God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM: and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, I AM hath sent me unto you." (Exodus 3:14, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *ICH WERDE SEIN, DER ICH SEIN WERDE.* At the burning bush God reveals His name to Moses: I AM THAT I AM. Luther translated with the future of sein: ICH WERDE SEIN.

UNIT 2 · ICH BIN: SEIN UND PERSONALPRONOMEN · LESSON 2.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

2.2 Woher kommst du? Countries and Languages

OBJECTIVES

- Ask and answer Woher kommst du? and Wo wohnst du?
- Name countries, nationalities and languages.
- Conjugate regular verbs (kommen, wohnen) and sprechen.
- Read Acts 2:8 in German.

Warm-up. Where were your grandparents born? Your great-grandparents? Millions of Americans have German ancestors. Today you learn to say where you and others come from, and what languages you speak.

WATCH

Learn How to Say Where You Are From in German | Daily German Conversations #05

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 3:50

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XWBmSAJO5D0

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on kommen and wohnen.

Note: GermanPod101's Daily German Conversations on saying where you are from, about four minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn German - German in Three Minutes - Do You Speak English?

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 4:16

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fnFB631UqkI

Session 2 or 3: asking Sprechen Sie Englisch?

KEY TERMS

Woher?
Where from? (voh-HAIR)

Wo?
Where? (VOH)

das Land
The country (dahs LAHNT).

die Sprache
The language (dee SHPRAH-khuh).

wohnen
To live, reside (VOH-nen).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

kommen
KOM-men
verb
to come

wohnen
VOH-nen
verb
to live, reside

sprechen
SHPREKH-en
verb (e→i)
to speak

woher
voh-HAIR
question
where from

das Land
dahs LAHNT
das · noun
country

die Sprache
dee SHPRAH-khuh
die · noun
language

Deutschland
DOYCH-lahnt
das · noun
Germany

Österreich
ÖS-ter-rikh
noun
Austria

die Schweiz
dee SHVITES
die · noun
Switzerland

heißen
HY-sen
verb
to be called

wo
VOH
question word
where

CORE IDEAS

The story. Fifty days after Jesus rose from the dead, His disciples were gathered in Jerusalem. Suddenly there came a sound from heaven like a rushing mighty wind, and they were filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other tongues. Jews from every nation under heaven were in the city for the feast, and each one heard

them speaking in his own language. Amazed, they asked: **Wie hören wir denn ein jeglicher seine Sprache, darin wir geboren sind?** Parthians, Medes, Egyptians, Romans, Cretans and Arabians: all heard the wonderful works of God in their own tongues.

How German works: regular verbs. Take the infinitive (kommen), remove -en to find the stem (komm-), and add the endings: **ich komme, du kommst, er/sie/es kommt, wir kommen, ihr kommt, sie/Sie kommen**. The same for **wohnen**: ich wohne, du wohnst, er wohnt… and **heißen**: ich heiße, du heißt, er heißt. **Sprechen** changes its vowel in du and er: **ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht, wir sprechen, ihr sprecht, sie sprechen**.

Countries and languages. Woher kommst du? — Ich komme aus Amerika (aus den USA). Countries: **Deutschland, Österreich, die Schweiz, England, Frankreich, Spanien, Italien, Mexiko, Kanada**. Note: **aus der Schweiz, aus den USA**. Languages end in -isch, written with a capital: **Deutsch, Englisch, Französisch, Spanisch, Italienisch. Ich spreche Englisch und ein bisschen Deutsch.** People: **der Deutsche / die Deutsche, der Amerikaner / die Amerikanerin, der Österreicher, der Schweizer**.

Where you live. Wo wohnst du? — Ich wohne in Ohio. Ich wohne in Columbus. German is spoken as a first language by about 95 million people in Germany, Austria, Switzerland, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg and parts of Belgium and Italy, more than any other native language in the European Union.

ACTIVITY

Map of German-speaking Europe and my family's roots

Draw a map of the German-speaking countries and write where your family comes from.

You will need

- A blank map of Europe or a printout
- Colored pencils

Steps

1. Color Germany, Austria, Switzerland and Liechtenstein, and label each in German with its capital (Berlin, Wien, Bern, Vaduz).
2. Write a sentence for each: In Österreich spricht man Deutsch.
3. Interview a parent about your family's origins and write: Meine Familie kommt aus… Mein Urgroßvater kam aus… (if you know it).
4. Present the map in German.

Tips

- Add the languages of Switzerland: Deutsch, Französisch, Italienisch and Rätoromanisch.
- Mark Wittenberg, Eisenach and Basel.

Check your work

☐ My map names four countries and capitals in German.

☐ I wrote at least six correct sentences with kommen, wohnen and sprechen.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the regular verb chart with kommen and the chart of sprechen.
2. Write a list of ten countries and their languages.
3. Copy Acts 2:8 in German and English.

> **From history.** In the 1700s and 1800s millions of Germans emigrated to America; today more than 40 million Americans name German ancestry, one of the two largest ancestry groups in the country.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can trace their own family tree back to the towns and villages their ancestors came from, and find them on a map.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Ask a friend where he comes from.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Woher + verb + du: kommst.

Answer: Woher kommst du?

Example 2. Say: My grandmother comes from Switzerland and speaks German.

▼ **Show solution**

1. er/sie form: kommt, spricht.
2. aus der Schweiz.

Answer: Meine Oma kommt aus der Schweiz und spricht Deutsch.

Example 3. Ask a stranger politely: Do you speak English?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Sie form: sprechen; verb first.

Answer: Sprechen Sie Englisch?

PRACTICE

1. Easy Say: I come from America.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich komme aus Amerika.

2. Easy What is die Sprache?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The language.

3. Easy How do you say Austria in German?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Österreich.

4. Medium Conjugate wohnen for du, er and ihr.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   du wohnst, er wohnt, ihr wohnt.

5. Medium Conjugate sprechen for ich, du, er.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht.

6. Medium Say: We live in Kansas.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wir wohnen in Kansas.

7. Hard Translate Acts 2:8 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?

8. Hard Write three sentences about a friend from Austria.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Das ist Lukas. Er kommt aus Österreich. Er wohnt in Wien und spricht Deutsch und Englisch.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying aus Schweiz. Switzerland takes the article: aus der Schweiz.
- Writing deutsch in lowercase for the language. As a noun, Deutsch is capitalized: Ich spreche Deutsch.
- Saying er sprecht. Sprechen changes its vowel: er spricht.

Make it a game · Wer bin ich?. The parent secretly chooses a famous person (Luther, Bach, Mozart, Erasmus, Lincoln). The student asks yes-no questions in German: Kommst du aus Deutschland? Sprichst du Englisch? Wohnst du in Wien? Guess in ten questions to win.

Scripture. "And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?" (Acts 2:8, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *Wie hören wir denn ein jeglicher seine Sprache, darin wir geboren sind?* At Pentecost, the Holy Spirit let people from many nations hear the Gospel each in his own language. The good news is for every tongue, including German and English.

UNIT 2 · ICH BIN: SEIN UND PERSONALPRONOMEN · LESSON 2.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

2.3 Wie ist er? Describing People and Asking Questions

OBJECTIVES

- Describe people with adjectives after sein.
- Negate with nicht and soften or strengthen with sehr, ziemlich, ein bisschen.
- Ask yes-no questions (verb first) and W-questions (wer, was, wo, wie, woher, wie alt).
- Read Psalm 139:14 in German.

Warm-up. How would you describe your best friend to someone who has never met him? Tall or short? Funny or serious? Today you learn to describe people in German and to ask questions about them.

WATCH

Learn How to Form Questions in German | Daily German Conversations #06

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 3:28

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=q3u_z7ewP4U

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on questions.

Note: GermanPod101's Daily German Conversations on forming questions, about three and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn the Nominative Case in German - Part 1: Personal Pronouns - A1 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 2:52

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UBaUvhEFZXg

Session 2: review of the personal pronouns.

KEY TERMS

das Adjektiv
The adjective (dahs AHT-yek-teef).

nicht
Not (NIKHT).

sehr
Very (ZAIR).

die Frage
The question (dee FRAH-guh).

wunderbar
Wonderful (VOON-der-bar).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

groß / klein
GROHS / KLINE
adjectives
big, tall / small, short

alt / jung
AHLT / YOONG
adjectives
old / young

nett
NET
adjective
nice

lustig
LOOS-tikh
adjective
funny

klug
KLOOK
adjective
smart, wise

fleißig
FLY-sikh
adjective
hard-working

nicht
NIKHT
adverb
not

warum
vah-ROOM
question
why

sehr
ZAIR
adverb
very

die Frage
dee FRAH-guh
die · noun
question

CORE IDEAS

The story. King David, the shepherd who became king, wrote Psalm 139 about how completely God knows each person: when we sit and rise, our thoughts from afar, every word before it is spoken. God formed us in our mother's womb. David marveled: **Ich danke dir dafür, daß ich wunderbar gemacht bin** (I will praise thee; for I am fearfully and wonderfully made). Every person you will describe in German this week, tall or short, quiet or loud, is made in the image of God.

How German works: adjectives after sein. After sein, the adjective has no ending: **Der Mann ist groß. Die Frau ist groß. Die Kinder sind groß.** Pairs: **groß / klein** (tall,

big / short, small), **alt / jung** (old / young), **schön / hässlich** (beautiful / ugly), **nett, freundlich / unfreundlich** (nice, friendly / unfriendly), **lustig / ernst** (funny / serious), **klug / dumm** (smart / dumb), **fleißig / faul** (hard-working / lazy), **schnell / langsam** (fast / slow), **stark / schwach** (strong / weak), **müde, glücklich, traurig** (tired, happy, sad).

How German works: nicht and sehr. Put **nicht** before the adjective: **Er ist nicht faul.** Strength words: **sehr** (very), **ziemlich** (quite), **ein bisschen** (a little), **zu** (too): **Erasmus ist sehr klug. Ich bin ein bisschen müde.**

How German works: questions. For a yes-no question, put the verb first: **Bist du müde? Ist er nett? Kommst du aus Texas?** Answer **Ja** or **Nein** (and **Doch!** to contradict a negative question: Bist du nicht müde? — Doch!). For other questions, a W-word comes first, then the verb: **Wer** (who), **Was** (what), **Wo** (where), **Woher** (where from), **Wie** (how), **Wie alt** (how old), **Warum** (why). **Wer ist das? Wie ist sie? Warum bist du traurig?**

ACTIVITY

Describe and guess

Write descriptions of family members and Bible figures for others to guess.

You will need

- Index cards

Steps

1. Write ten cards, each describing a person in three or four sentences without the name: Er ist groß und stark. Er ist nicht alt. Er ist sehr mutig. Er ist Hirte. (David)
2. Read each card aloud; the family guesses: Ist das David?
3. Answer with Ja or Nein, and give one more clue if needed.
4. Write five of your own W-questions about the person and answer them.

Tips

- Include Goliath, Ruth, Moses, Peter and Martin Luther.
- Use Doch! at least once.

Check your work

☐ I used at least fifteen different adjectives.

☐ I asked yes-no and W-questions correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the adjective pairs.
2. Copy the W-words with an example question each.
3. Copy Psalm 139:14 in German and English.

> **From history.** Germans often use the word gemütlich, which has no exact English twin: cozy, warm, friendly and unhurried all at once, like a family evening around the table.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can describe each person at the dinner table in German, one adjective each, without repeating.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Make negative: Die Lehrerin ist streng.

▼ **Show solution**

1. nicht before the adjective.

Answer: Die Lehrerin ist nicht streng.

Example 2. Make a yes-no question: Er ist müde.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Verb first.

Answer: Ist er müde?

Example 3. Ask where the boy lives.

▼ **Show solution**

1. W-word first, verb second.

Answer: Wo wohnt der Junge?

PRACTICE

1. Easy Opposite of alt?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   jung (or neu for things).

2. Easy What does sehr mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Very.

3. Easy What does wer mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Who.

4. Medium Say: My sister is very funny.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Meine Schwester ist sehr lustig.

5. Medium Make a question: Du kommst aus Berlin.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Kommst du aus Berlin?

6. Medium Answer with Doch: Bist du nicht müde?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Doch, ich bin müde.

7. Hard Describe Erasmus in Holbein's portrait in three sentences.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Erasmus ist alt. Er ist sehr klug und ernst. Er ist fleißig.

8. Hard Translate the beginning of Psalm 139:14 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   I will praise thee; for I am fearfully and wonderfully made.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Adding endings after sein: Er ist großer. After sein, no ending: Er ist groß.
- Putting the verb second in a yes-no question: Du bist müde? In writing, put the verb first: Bist du müde?
- Confusing wer (who) and wo (where). Wer is who; wo is where.

> **Make it a game · Ja, Nein, Doch.** The parent asks quick questions, some negative: Bist du müde? Bist du nicht klug? Ist der Hund nicht groß? The student must answer with Ja, Nein or Doch and a full sentence. A wrong Doch costs a point.

> **Scripture.** “I will praise thee; for I am fearfully and wonderfully made: marvellous are thy works; and that my soul knoweth right well.” (Psalm 139:14, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *daß ich wunderbar gemacht bin; wunderbar sind deine Werke* David praises God for making him. Luther wrote wunderbar (wonderfully), the adjective with no ending after sein.

UNIT 3

Die Familie: haben und Possessivartikel

Lesson 3.1 names the family (Vater, Mutter, Eltern, Bruder, Schwester, Großeltern, Onkel, Tante, Cousin, Kusine…) and studies Runge’s The Artist’s Parents, an elderly couple standing with two small grandchildren in their garden, with Exodus 20:12.

Lesson 3.2 teaches haben (ich habe, du hast, er hat…), the genders der, die, das, ein and eine, and the main plural patterns, with Psalm 127:3. Lesson 3.3 teaches the possessive articles and how they take an -e with feminine and plural nouns (mein Vater, meine Mutter, meine Eltern), with Ruth 1:16.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–2.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name at least sixteen family members with der or die.
- ☐ I can conjugate haben and say how many brothers and sisters I have.
- ☐ I can use der, die, das, ein and eine and form common plurals.
- ☐ I can use all the possessive articles correctly.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

3.1	**Meine Familie: Family Members**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
3.2	**Ich habe: haben, Genders and Plurals**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
3.3	**Mein, dein, sein: Possessives**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 3 test

Unit 3 test. Questions 1–2 are oral. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Describe your family in five sentences.
2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Answer: Hast du Geschwister? Wie heißen sie? Wie alt sind sie?
3. **5 pts**
   Conjugate haben in all forms.
4. **5 pts**
   Write the article (der, die, das): ___ Vater, ___ Mutter, ___ Kind, ___ Familie, ___ Mädchen.
5. **5 pts**
   Write the plural: der Bruder, die Schwester, das Kind, der Sohn, die Tochter.

6. **5 pts**

   Fill in the possessive: (my) ___ Vater, (my) ___ Mutter, (your, du) ___ Eltern, (his) ___ Schwester, (our) ___ Haus.

7. **5 pts**

   Fill in: (her) ___ Bruder, (their) ___ Kinder, (your, Sie) ___ Familie, (your, ihr) ___ Oma, (its) ___ Name.

8. **5 pts**

   Who is who? Der Vater meines Vaters is my ___; die Schwester meiner Mutter is my ___; der Sohn meiner Tante is my ___.

9. **5 pts**

   Write Exodus 20:12a in German and translate.

10. **5 pts**

    Describe Runge's painting in three German sentences.

ANSWER KEY

1. For example: Ich habe einen Bruder und zwei Schwestern. Mein Vater heißt ___. Meine Mutter ist ___. Meine Großeltern wohnen in ___.
2. Ja, ich habe ___ / Nein, ich habe keine Geschwister. Sie heißen ___. Sie sind ___ Jahre alt.
3. ich habe, du hast, er/sie/es hat, wir haben, ihr habt, sie/Sie haben.
4. der, die, das, die, das.
5. die Brüder, die Schwestern, die Kinder, die Söhne, die Töchter.
6. mein, meine, deine, seine, unser.
7. ihr, ihre, Ihre, eure, sein.
8. Großvater (Opa); Tante; Cousin.
9. Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren. Honour thy father and thy mother.
10. For example: Das ist eine Familie. Die Großeltern sind alt. Die Kinder sind klein und spielen mit Blumen.

> Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: MEIN FAMILIENSTAMMBAUM (MY FAMILY TREE)

Draw a family tree of at least three generations with photos or drawings, labeled in German (Großvater, Großmutter, Vater, Mutter, Onkel, Tante, Cousin, Kusine, Bruder, Schwester…), and write a paragraph of at least ten sentences presenting your family with haben, sein and possessives. Present it aloud and end with Exodus 20:12 in German.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Vocabulary	At least twelve family words with correct articles.
Grammar	haben, sein and the possessives correct.
Content	At least ten sentences.
Delivery	Presented aloud, with the verse.

UNIT 3 · DIE FAMILIE: HABEN UND POSSESSIVARTIKEL · LESSON 3.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

3.1 Meine Familie: Family Members

OBJECTIVES

- Name the members of the family with their articles.
- Say who is related to whom: Das ist mein Onkel. Er ist der Bruder meiner Mutter.
- Study Runge's The Artist's Parents.
- Read Exodus 20:12 in German.

> **Warm-up.** Who is in your family? How many grandparents, aunts, uncles and cousins can you name? God set each of us in a family. Today you learn to name your family in German.

WATCH

How to Talk about Your Family in German?

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 7:26

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PVuUJ4EDilw

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph. Write each family word with der or die.

Note: GermanPod101 on how to talk about your family in German, about seven and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Conversation About Family - German Conversational Phrases

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 6:16

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SrCBeuiEKEw

Session 2 or 3: a conversation about family.

KEY TERMS

die Familie
The family (dee fah-MEE-lee-uh).

die Eltern
The parents (dee EL-tern).

die Geschwister
Brothers and sisters, siblings (dee guh-SHVIS-ter).

die Großeltern
The grandparents (dee GROHS-el-tern).

ehren
To honor (AY-ren).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

der Vater / die Mutter
FAH-ter / MOOT-ter
der/die · noun
father / mother

die Eltern
EL-tern
die (plural)
parents

der Bruder
dehr BROO-der
der · noun
brother

die Schwester
dee SHVES-ter
die · noun
sister

die Geschwister
guh-SHVIS-ter
die (plural)
siblings

der Sohn / die Tochter
ZOHN / TOKH-ter
der/die · noun
son / daughter

der Onkel / die Tante
ONG-kel / TAHN-tuh
der/die · noun
uncle / aunt

der Großvater
dehr GROHS-fah-ter
der · noun
grandfather

die Großmutter
dee GROHS-moot-ter
die · noun
grandmother

der Cousin / die Kusine
koo-ZANG / koo-ZEE-nuh
der/die · noun
cousin

die Familie
dee fah-MEE-lyuh
die · noun
family

die Großeltern
dee GROHS-el-tern
die · plural noun
grandparents

CORE IDEAS

The story. Philipp Otto Runge was born in 1777 in Wolgast, a harbor town on the Baltic coast of Pomerania, the ninth of eleven children of a merchant and shipowner. He became one of the great painters of German Romanticism, but he died of tuberculosis at only thirty-three. In 1806 he painted his parents, Daniel and

Magdalena Runge, life-size in front of their house in Wolgast: the old father in his long brown coat, with his hat and walking stick, holding a little rose; the mother in a black silk cloak and white bonnet, holding his arm. Beside them two small grandchildren play among the lilies. Behind them the garden fence and, beyond it, the water and the masts of ships. It is a picture of a long marriage, of honor for the old, and of a family going on into the next generation.

How German works: the family. der Vater, die Mutter, die Eltern (parents), **der Sohn, die Tochter, das Kind, die Kinder**, **der Bruder, die Schwester, die Geschwister** (siblings), **der Großvater (Opa), die Großmutter (Oma), die Großeltern**, **der Enkel, die Enkelin** (grandson, granddaughter), **der Onkel, die Tante**, **der Cousin, die Kusine (Cousine)**, **der Neffe, die Nichte**, **der Mann, die Frau** (husband, wife). Informally: **Papa, Mama, Opa, Oma**.

How German works: who is who. Das ist mein Vater. Er heißt Thomas. Das ist meine Mutter. Sie heißt Anna. To say whose relative, German often uses von: **Das ist der Bruder von meiner Mutter** (that is my mother's brother) — **Das ist mein Onkel.** For names, add -s with no apostrophe: **Annas Bruder, Peters Mutter**.

Honor. The Fifth Commandment (the Fourth in Luther's numbering) reads: **Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren**, and Paul calls it the first commandment with a promise: that it may be well with thee. Luther explained it in his Small Catechism: we should fear and love God, so that we do not despise or anger our parents and superiors, but honor, serve, obey, love and esteem them.

PICTURE STUDY



The Artist's Parents, Philipp Otto Runge, 1806 · Oil on canvas · Hamburger Kunsthalle, Hamburg

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Runge (1777–1810) was a deeply Christian painter who saw God's hand in nature, light and color. He painted his parents with great respect: they stand tall, calm and dignified, filling the canvas like monuments, while the children, small and lively, reach for the flowers. The lilies and the rose suggest the beauty of life in its seasons: spring for the children and late autumn for the old couple.

Look closely

- How many people are in the painting? Who are they?
- What is the father holding? What is the mother wearing on her head?
- What are the children doing?
- What can you see beyond the fence?

Talk about it

1. Describe each person in German with sein and an adjective.
2. How does Runge show honor for his parents?

ACTIVITY

Family photo album

Make a small photo album of your family with German captions.

You will need

- Photos or drawings of family members
- Paper or a small album
- Glue and pens

Steps

1. Put one family member on each page (at least eight people).
2. Write a caption: Das ist meine Oma. Sie heißt Helen. Sie ist die Mutter von meinem Vater.
3. Add an adjective sentence for each: Sie ist sehr nett.
4. Show the album to a grandparent and read the captions aloud.

Tips

- Add a page for Runge's family: Das sind die Eltern von Philipp Otto Runge.
- Add the German words for in-laws: der Schwiegervater, die Schwiegermutter.

Check your work

☐ My album has eight family members with correct articles.

☐ Each caption says who the person is related to.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the family words with der or die, grouped in men and women.
2. Draw a small tree of your closest family with German labels.
3. Copy Exodus 20:12 in German and English.

> **From history.** Luther's Small Catechism of 1529, which explains the Ten Commandments, the Creed and the Lord's Prayer, was taught in German homes and schools for centuries; Luther wrote it for the head of the household to teach his family.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can call a grandparent and let the student ask, in German, about the grandparent's own parents and childhood.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: This is my uncle. He is my father's brother.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Das ist mein Onkel.
2. der Bruder von meinem Vater.

Answer: Das ist mein Onkel. Er ist der Bruder von meinem Vater.

Example 2. What is the German for Peter's sister?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Add -s to the name, no apostrophe.

Answer: Peters Schwester.

Example 3. What is the German word for siblings?

▼ **Show solution**

1. A collective plural word.

Answer: die Geschwister.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is die Tochter?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The daughter.

2. Easy What is der Onkel?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The uncle.

3. Easy What are die Großeltern?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The grandparents.

4. Medium Who is the daughter of your aunt?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   meine Kusine (Cousine).

5. Medium Say: That is Anna's grandmother.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Das ist Annas Großmutter (Oma).

6. Medium Give the informal words for grandfather and grandmother.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Opa, Oma.

7. Hard Explain Exodus 20:12 in your own words and say the first part in German.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   God commands children to honor their parents; Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren.

8. Hard Who are the children in Runge's painting, and how are they related to the old couple?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Two of the old couple's grandchildren: they are die Enkel (Enkelkinder).

COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing Anna's Bruder with an apostrophe. German adds -s with no apostrophe: Annas Bruder.
- Using die Eltern as singular. Eltern is always plural: Meine Eltern sind…
- Mixing der Cousin (male) and die Kusine (female).

> **Make it a game · Wer ist das?.** The parent describes a relative in German: Er ist der Vater von meiner Mutter. The student names him: Das ist dein Opa! Then switch. Score a point for each right answer; harder relationships score two.

> **Scripture.** “Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the LORD thy God giveth thee.” (Exodus 20:12, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren* The Fifth Commandment (Luther’s Fourth) calls children to honor father and mother, with the promise of long life. Notice deinen Vater and deine Mutter: the possessive changes with the noun.

UNIT 3 · DIE FAMILIE: HABEN UND POSSESSIVARTIKEL · LESSON 3.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

3.2 Ich habe: haben, Genders and Plurals

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate haben in the present tense.
- Use der, die, das and ein, eine with nouns.
- Form the most common plural patterns.
- Read Psalm 127:3 in German.

> **Warm-up.** In English, the is the same for every noun. In German, every noun has a gender: masculine, feminine or neuter, and the word for the changes with it. A girl is neuter, a table is masculine, a lamp is feminine. Today you learn the system, and the second most important German verb.

WATCH

Learn the verb "to have" in German - A1 [with Jacqueline]

lingoni GERMAN · 9:11

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hTgOdFHqlNE

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on haben.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the verb haben (to have), about nine minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

HABEN in the Present Tense - Mastering German Verbs

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 2:31

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yv1e2WtB_Es

Session 2: a quick drill of haben in the present tense.

KEY TERMS

haben

To have (HAH-ben).

das Geschlecht

The gender (of a noun) (dahs guh-SHLEKHT).

der Artikel

The article (der, die, das, ein, eine) (dehr ar-TEE-kel).

der Plural

The plural (dehr ploo-RAHL).

die Gabe

The gift (dee GAH-buh).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

haben
HAH-ben
verb (irregular)
to have

der Tisch
dehr TISH
der · noun
table

die Lampe
dee LAHM-puh
die · noun
lamp

das Buch / die Bücher
dahs BOOKH / dee BÜ-kher
das · noun
book / books

das Mädchen
dahs MAYT-khen
das · noun
girl

der Junge
dehr YOONG-uh
der · noun
boy

das Kind / die Kinder
KINT / KIN-der
das · noun
child / children

die Gabe
dee GAH-buh
die · noun
gift

das Geschlecht
dahs guh-SHLEKHT
das · noun
gender

der Plural
dehr ploo-RAHL
der · noun
plural

CORE IDEAS

The story. Psalm 127 is a Song of Degrees, sung by pilgrims going up to Jerusalem, and its title names Solomon. It begins: Except the LORD build the house, they labour in vain that build it. Then it says: **Siehe, Kinder sind eine Gabe des HERRN** (Lo, children are an heritage of the LORD). Children are not a burden but a gift, like arrows in the hand of a mighty man. The Runges of Wolgast had eleven children; in Bible times and in old Germany, a full table was a blessing.

How German works: haben. ich habe, du hast, er/sie/es hat, wir haben, ihr habt, sie/Sie haben. Ich habe einen Bruder. Hast du Geschwister? Wir haben zwei Hunde.

Er hat Hunger (he is hungry: literally has hunger).

How German works: the genders. Every noun is masculine (**der**), feminine (**die**) or neuter (**das**), and the plural of all three is **die**. **der Vater, der Tisch; die Mutter, die Lampe; das Kind, das Buch, das Mädchen** (the girl: all words ending in -chen and -lein are neuter). The indefinite article: **ein** (masculine and neuter), **eine** (feminine): ein Bruder, eine Schwester, ein Kind. Helpful signs: words in -ung, -heit, -keit, -schaft and most in -e are feminine (die Zeitung, die Freiheit, die Familie). Always learn every noun with its article.

How German works: plurals. German has several plural patterns; learn each with the noun. Add **-e** (der Tag → die Tage; der Sohn → die Söhne, with umlaut), **-er** with umlaut (das Kind → die Kinder; das Buch → die Bücher), **-n / -en** (die Schwester → die Schwestern; die Frau → die Frauen), **-s** for foreign words (das Auto → die Autos), or nothing, sometimes with umlaut (der Lehrer → die Lehrer; der Bruder → die Brüder; die Tochter → die Töchter).

ACTIVITY

Color-coded house labels

Label things around your house with their articles in three colors.

You will need

- Sticky notes in three colors (or white notes and three pens: blue, red, green)
- A marker

Steps

1. Choose a color for der (blue), die (red) and das (green).
2. Write twenty nouns for things in your house on sticky notes in the right color: der Tisch, die Tür, das Fenster…
3. Stick each on the object and say it aloud every time you pass by this week.
4. Write the plural on the back of each note.

Tips

- Count things in German with haben: Wir haben drei Stühle in der Küche.
- Add the family: der Vater, die Mutter, das Baby.

Check your work

☐ I labeled twenty things with correct articles.

☐ I can give the plural of at least ten of them.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the haben chart.
2. Make three columns (der, die, das) with eight nouns each.
3. Write the plurals of twelve nouns grouped by pattern.
4. Copy Psalm 127:3 in German and English.

> **From history.** Mark Twain joked in his essay The Awful German Language that in German a young lady has no sex but a turnip has; he loved the language anyway and learned to give speeches in it.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can play der-die-das at dinner: point at things on the table and name them with articles and plurals.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: I have a brother and a sister.

▼ **Show solution**

1. ich habe; ein Bruder → einen Bruder after haben (you will learn why in Unit 5); eine Schwester.

Answer: Ich habe einen Bruder und eine Schwester.

Example 2. Article and plural of Buch?

▼ **Show solution**

1. das Buch; plural -er with umlaut.

Answer: das Buch, die Bücher.

Example 3. Why is it das Mädchen?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Nouns ending in -chen are always neuter.

Answer: Because -chen makes every noun neuter.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is the du form of haben?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   hast.

2. Easy What is the er form?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   hat.

3. Easy What is the plural article for all genders?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   die.

4. Medium Give the article: Lampe, Tisch, Buch, Zeitung, Mädchen.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   die, der, das, die, das.

5. Medium Give the plural: die Frau, das Auto, der Tag.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   die Frauen, die Autos, die Tage.

6. Medium Say: We have two dogs.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wir haben zwei Hunde.

7. Hard Say: Do you (Sie) have children? — Yes, I have three children.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Haben Sie Kinder? — Ja, ich habe drei Kinder.

8. Hard Translate Psalm 127:3a from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Lo, children are a gift (heritage) of the LORD.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Guessing the gender from the meaning. Das Mädchen is neuter; always learn the article.
- Adding -s to every plural. Only some foreign words take -s: das Auto, die Autos.
- Saying er habt. The er form is hat.

> **Make it a game · Der-die-das-Ecken.** Name three corners of the room der, die and das. The parent calls a noun; the student runs to the right corner and says it with its article and plural. A wrong corner costs a point; ten right wins.

> **Scripture.** “Lo, children are an heritage of the LORD: and the fruit of the womb is his reward.” (Psalm 127:3, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Siehe, Kinder sind eine Gabe des HERRN* Children are a gift from the LORD, and a household built by Him stands. Notice die Gabe and das Geschenk: two words for gift with two genders.

UNIT 3 · DIE FAMILIE: HABEN UND POSSESSIVARTIKEL · LESSON 3.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

3.3 Mein, dein, sein: Possessives

OBJECTIVES

- Use mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer, ihr and Ihr.
- Add -e for feminine and plural nouns: meine Mutter, meine Eltern.
- Talk about family members with possessives.
- Read Ruth 1:16 in German.

> **Warm-up.** My, your, his, her, our, their: we use these little words all day long. In German they change their ending to match the noun that follows. Today you learn them, and one of the most beautiful promises in the Bible.

WATCH

Learn the Nominative Case in German - Part 2: Possessive Articles - A1 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 8:27

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=a_eTHyBbRjs

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph. Copy Jenny's chart.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on possessive articles in the nominative case, about eight and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

German Words of the Week with Alisa - Family

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 2:54

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=o90qKewIPDQ

Session 2 or 3: review of family vocabulary.

KEY TERMS

mein / dein

My / your (familiar) (MINE / DINE).

sein / ihr

His, its / her (ZINE / EER).

unser / euer

Our / your (plural familiar) (OON-zer / OY-er).

ihr / Ihr

Their / your (polite) (EER).

das Volk

The people, nation (dahs FOLK).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

mein
MINE
possessive
my

dein
DINE
possessive
your (familiar)

sein
ZINE
possessive
his; its

ihr
EER
possessive
her; their

unser
OON-zer
possessive
our

euer
OY-er
possessive
your (plural familiar)

Ihr
EER
possessive
your (polite)

das Volk
dahs FOLK
das · noun
people, nation

die Kinder
dee KIN-der
die · plural noun
children

das Haus
dahs HOWS
das · noun
house

CORE IDEAS

The story. In the days of the judges, a famine drove Naomi, her husband and two sons from Bethlehem to the land of Moab. There the sons married Moabite women, Orpah and Ruth. Then Naomi's husband and both sons died. When Naomi decided to go home to Bethlehem, she urged her daughters-in-law to stay in Moab. Orpah kissed her and went back, but Ruth clung to her and said: Whither thou goest, I will go … **Dein Volk ist mein Volk, und dein Gott ist mein Gott** (thy people shall be my people, and thy God my God). Ruth chose Naomi's family and Naomi's God, and she became the great-grandmother of King David and an ancestor of Jesus.

How German works: the possessives. ich → mein (my), **du → dein** (your), **er → sein** (his), **sie → ihr** (her), **es → sein** (its), **wir → unser** (our), **ihr → euer** (your, plural), **sie → ihr** (their), **Sie → Ihr** (your, polite, capitalized).

How German works: the endings. Possessives take the same endings as ein: no ending before masculine and neuter nouns, **-e** before feminine and plural nouns. **mein Vater, mein Kind, meine Mutter, meine Eltern; sein Bruder, seine Schwester; unser Haus, unsere Familie; Ihr Sohn, Ihre Tochter**. Euer drops its second e when it adds an ending: **eure Kinder**.

His or her? In German the possessive depends on the owner (sein for a male, ihr for a female) and the ending depends on the noun owned: **Peter und seine Schwester** (Peter and his sister), **Anna und ihr Bruder** (Anna and her brother), **Anna und ihre Mutter**.

ACTIVITY

Interview and report

Interview a family member about his or her family and write a short report with possessives.

You will need

- Your German notebook

Steps

1. Ask a parent or grandparent about his or her own parents, brothers and sisters (in English if needed).
2. Write a report of eight sentences in German: Meine Oma hat drei Brüder. Ihre Brüder heißen… Ihr Vater war Bauer. Ihre Mutter…
3. Underline every possessive and check its ending.
4. Read the report aloud to the person you interviewed.

Tips

- Write the same report from your grandmother's view: Mein Vater…, meine Mutter…
- Add Ruth 1:16 at the end.

Check your work

☐ My report has at least eight possessives, all correct.

☐ I chose sein and ihr correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the possessive chart with an example noun for each (masculine and feminine).
2. Write six sentences about family members with different possessives.
3. Copy Ruth 1:16 from Wo du hin gehst in German and English.

> **From history.** The Book of Ruth is read in many churches at weddings for Ruth 1:16, though Ruth spoke it to her mother-in-law; in Germany, Luther's words Wo du hin gehst, da will ich auch hin gehen are one of the most popular wedding verses.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can read the whole Book of Ruth aloud in the Luther Bible over the week, one chapter a day.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: my sister and my brother.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Feminine: meine; masculine: mein.

Answer: meine Schwester und mein Bruder.

Example 2. Say: Lisa and her father.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Female owner: ihr; masculine noun: no ending.

Answer: Lisa und ihr Vater.

Example 3. Ask politely: Is that your daughter?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Polite your: Ihr; feminine: Ihre.

Answer: Ist das Ihre Tochter?

PRACTICE

1. Easy How do you say our?

▼ **Show answer**

unser.

2. Easy How do you say your (du)?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   dein.

3. Easy Which possessive goes with er?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   sein.

4. Medium Fill in: (my) ___ Eltern, (his) ___ Haus, (her) ___ Katze.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   meine, sein, ihre.

5. Medium Say: Our family is big.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Unsere Familie ist groß.

6. Medium Say: Children, where is your teacher? (ihr)

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Kinder, wo ist euer Lehrer?

7. Hard Translate: Thomas and his sister visit their grandmother.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Thomas und seine Schwester besuchen ihre Oma (Großmutter).

8. Hard Translate Ruth 1:16b from Luther: Dein Volk ist mein Volk, und dein Gott ist mein Gott.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Thy people shall be my people, and thy God my God.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Choosing sein or ihr by the noun owned. It depends on the owner: Anna und ihr Bruder.
- Forgetting the -e: mein Mutter. Feminine and plural need -e: meine Mutter.
- Writing euere. With an ending, euer becomes eure.

Make it a game · Wem gehört das?. Collect one object from each family member in a basket. Draw an object and say whose it is: Das ist Papas Brille. Das ist seine Brille! Das ist Mamas Tasche. Das ist ihre Tasche! A wrong possessive passes the turn.

Scripture. "And Ruth said, Intreat me not to leave thee, or to return from following after thee: for whither thou goest, I will go; and where thou lodgest, I will lodge: thy people shall be my people, and thy God my God:" (Ruth 1:16, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *Dein Volk ist mein Volk, und dein Gott ist mein Gott.* Ruth the Moabite chooses Naomi's people and Naomi's God. Notice the possessives: dein Volk, mein Volk, dein Gott, mein Gott.

UNIT 4

In der Schule: Verben und Uhrzeit

Lesson 4.1 names the things in a classroom with der, die and das, asks Was ist das?, and negates nouns with kein (Das ist kein Heft, das ist ein Buch), with Anker's painting of examination day in a Swiss village school.

Lesson 4.2 completes the regular present tense (lernen, spielen, machen, arbeiten, antworten) and names school subjects (Mathe, Deutsch, Geschichte, Religion), with Proverbs 22:6. Lesson 4.3 tells time (Es ist halb acht; um Viertel nach drei), names the days, and teaches the most important rule of German word order: the verb is always the second element (Am Montag lerne ich Deutsch), with Ecclesiastes 3:1.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–3.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name twenty classroom things with their articles.
- ☐ I can use ein and kein correctly.
- ☐ I can conjugate any regular verb in the present tense.
- ☐ I can tell time and say what I do on which day, with the verb second.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

4.1	**Was ist das? Classroom Things, ein and kein**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
4.2	**Ich lerne: Regular Verbs and School Subjects**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
4.3	**Wie spät ist es? Time, Days and Word Order**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 4 test

Unit 4 test. Questions 1–2 are oral. 50 points.

1. 5 pts
   Oral: Point to five things in the room and name them with der, die or das.
2. 5 pts
   Oral: Describe your school day: what you study, and when.
3. 5 pts
   Answer with kein: Ist das ein Bleistift? (Kuli) Ist das eine Tafel? (Karte)
4. 5 pts
   Conjugate lernen for all persons.
5. 5 pts
   Conjugate arbeiten for ich, du, er, ihr.

6. **5 pts**

   Write the times in German: 7:00, 8:30, 9:15, 10:45, 12:00 noon.

7. **5 pts**

   Write the seven days of the week in German.

8. **5 pts**

   Rewrite starting with the underlined words: Ich spiele (am Samstag) Fußball. Wir lernen (um neun Uhr) Deutsch.

9. **5 pts**

   Write Proverbs 1:7a in German and translate.

10. **5 pts**

    Describe Anker's School Examination in three German sentences.

ANSWER KEY

1. For example: der Tisch, die Tür, das Fenster, der Stuhl, die Lampe.
2. For example: Um acht Uhr lerne ich Mathe. Um zehn Uhr lese ich. Am Nachmittag spiele ich Fußball.
3. Nein, das ist kein Bleistift, das ist ein Kuli. Nein, das ist keine Tafel, das ist eine Karte.
4. ich lerne, du lernst, er lernt, wir lernen, ihr lernt, sie/Sie lernen.
5. ich arbeite, du arbeitest, er arbeitet, ihr arbeitet.
6. Es ist sieben Uhr. Es ist halb neun. Es ist Viertel nach neun. Es ist Viertel vor elf. Es ist zwölf Uhr (Mittag).
7. Montag, Dienstag, Mittwoch, Donnerstag, Freitag, Samstag (Sonnabend), Sonntag.
8. Am Samstag spiele ich Fußball. Um neun Uhr lernen wir Deutsch.
9. Des HERRN Furcht ist Anfang der Erkenntnis. The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge.
10. For example: Das ist eine Schule. Die Kinder sind klein. Die Männer am Tisch sind ernst.

> Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: MEIN STUNDENPLAN (MY TIMETABLE)

Make your weekly timetable in German as Germans do (days across the top, times down the side, subjects in the boxes), and write a paragraph of at least ten sentences about your school week with times, days and regular verbs, each sentence starting with a time word and the verb second. Present it aloud.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Timetable	Complete, with German days, times and subjects.
Verbs	At least eight different regular verbs, correctly conjugated.
Word order	The verb is second in every sentence.
Delivery	Presented aloud with correct times.

UNIT 4 · IN DER SCHULE: VERBEN UND UHRZEIT · LESSON 4.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

4.1 Was ist das? Classroom Things, ein and kein

OBJECTIVES

- Name classroom things with der, die and das.
- Ask and answer Was ist das? and Wer ist das?
- Negate nouns with kein, keine.
- Describe Anker's The School Examination.

> **Warm-up.** Look around your school table. How many things can you name? Pencil, book, notebook, table, chair, lamp, window. Every one of them has a gender in German. Today you name them, and learn the little word that says not a.

WATCH

How to Negate German Sentences - NICHT vs. KEIN for Beginners - A1/A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 5:29

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4KtXdQJ_Etg

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on kein.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on nicht and kein for beginners, about five and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Finally Master German Articles! - The Masculine Article "der" - A1 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 6:16

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_lwRdlZvqa8

Session 2 or 3: masculine nouns with der.

KEY TERMS

die Schule
The school (dee SHOO-luh).

Was ist das?
What is that? (vahs IST dahs)

kein / keine
No, not a (KINE / KINE-uh).

die Prüfung
The examination, test (dee PRÜ-foong).

die Erkenntnis
Knowledge (dee air-KENT-nis).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

die Schule
dee SHOO-luh
die · noun
school

der Bleistift
dehr BLY-shtift
der · noun
pencil

der Kuli
dehr KOO-lee
der · noun
ballpoint pen

das Heft
dahs HEFT
das · noun
notebook

die Tafel
dee TAH-fel
die · noun
board

der Stuhl
dehr SHTOOL
der · noun
chair

das Fenster
dahs FEN-ster
das · noun
window

kein
KINE
article
no, not a

die Schere
dee SHAY-ruh
die · noun
scissors

das Wörterbuch
dahs VÖR-ter-bookh
das · noun
dictionary

CORE IDEAS

The story. In the 1800s a Swiss village school held a public examination every spring. The schoolroom was decorated with green garlands and flowers, the parents came, and the school commission (the pastor, the mayor and village elders) sat at a table covered with green cloth to hear the children recite, read and do sums. Albert Anker, the son of a veterinarian in the village of Ins near Bern, had sat through such days as a boy. In 1862 he painted one: the old schoolmaster holds up a wall chart, a small barefoot boy stands on tiptoe to point at it with a stick, a little girl clings to her friend, and the gentlemen at the table listen, one of them cupping his hand behind

his ear. Every child in Anker's village learned to read, because every child was expected to read the Bible and the catechism.

How German works: the classroom. der Tisch, der Stuhl, der Bleistift, der Kuli (ballpoint pen), **der Radiergummi** (eraser), **der Rucksack, der Computer; die Tafel** (board), **die Tür, die Lampe, die Uhr, die Karte** (map), **die Schere** (scissors); **das Buch, das Heft** (notebook), **das Fenster, das Papier, das Lineal** (ruler), **das Wörterbuch** (dictionary). Ask: **Was ist das? — Das ist ein Heft.** For people: **Wer ist das? — Das ist der Lehrer.**

How German works: kein. To say not a or no before a noun, use **kein**, which takes the same endings as ein: **Das ist kein Bleistift. Das ist keine Tafel. Das ist kein Buch. Das sind keine Bücher.** Use **nicht** for everything else (verbs, adjectives, names, nouns with der/die/das): **Das ist nicht der Lehrer. Das Heft ist nicht neu.**

The beginning of knowledge. The Book of Proverbs, written for young people, begins: **Des HERRN Furcht ist Anfang der Erkenntnis** (the fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge). In the old German schools, the school day opened with a hymn and a prayer, and learning began with God.

PICTURE STUDY



The School Examination, Albert Anker, 1862 · Oil on canvas · Kunstmuseum Bern

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Albert Anker (1831–1910) studied theology before he became a painter, and his pictures of Swiss village life are full of quiet respect for ordinary people, children and the old. Here every face is different: the nervous children, the proud teacher, the serious and slightly sleepy commission. The garland shows that the examination was a festival as well as a test.

Look closely

- Find the boy pointing at the chart. What is he wearing?
- Find the man cupping his ear. Why is he doing that?
- Find the garland and the flowers. Why are they there?
- How many children can you count?

Talk about it

1. Name five things in the room in German with der, die or das.
2. How do you feel before a test? How does Anker show the children's feelings?

ACTIVITY

Label your classroom

Label twenty things where you do school, and quiz the family with Was ist das?

You will need

- Sticky notes in blue, red and green
- A marker

Steps

1. Label twenty school things in the right color for der, die or das.
2. Point at things and quiz a family member: Was ist das? — Das ist ein Kuli.
3. Then play the kein game: point at a book and ask Ist das ein Heft? — Nein, das ist kein Heft, das ist ein Buch!
4. Write ten of the questions and answers in your notebook.

Tips

- Draw a plan of your schoolroom with German labels.
- Add the plural of each thing on the back of its note.

Check your work

☐ I labeled twenty things with correct articles.

☐ I used kein and keine correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy twenty classroom nouns in three columns (der, die, das).
2. Write five sentences with kein and five with nicht.
3. Copy Proverbs 1:7 in German and English.

> **From history.** Many German-speaking lands required schooling early: Duke Ernest the Pious of Saxe-Gotha ordered compulsory schooling for boys and girls in 1642, so that all could read the Bible and the catechism.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can make the schoolroom German-only for one session a day this week.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Answer: Ist das ein Stuhl? (no, a table)

▼ **Show solution**

1. Masculine: kein; then the right noun.

Answer: Nein, das ist kein Stuhl, das ist ein Tisch.

Example 2. Make negative: Das ist eine Uhr.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Feminine: keine.

Answer: Das ist keine Uhr.

Example 3. Make negative: Das ist der Lehrer.

▼ **Show solution**

1. With der, die, das use nicht.

Answer: Das ist nicht der Lehrer.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Article for Heft, Tafel, Bleistift?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   das, die, der.

2. Easy What is das Fenster?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The window.

3. Easy Ask what something is.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Was ist das?

4. Medium Make negative: Das ist ein Buch.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Das ist kein Buch.

5. Medium Make negative: Das sind Hefte.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Das sind keine Hefte.

6. Medium Make negative: Das Buch ist alt.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Das Buch ist nicht alt.

7. Hard Translate Proverbs 1:7a from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge.

8. Hard Describe the boy in Anker's painting in two German sentences.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Der Junge ist klein. Er ist barfuß und zeigt auf die Tafel (die Karte).

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying nicht ein. Before a noun with ein, use kein: kein Buch.
- Forgetting the -e with feminine nouns: kein Tafel. Say keine Tafel.
- Writing nouns in lowercase. Every German noun is capitalized: das Heft, die Tafel.

> **Make it a game · Ein oder kein?.** The parent holds up an object and makes a statement, true or false: Das ist ein Lineal! The student answers Ja, das ist ein Lineal or Nein, das ist kein Lineal, das ist ein Bleistift. Ten right in a row wins.

> **Scripture.** “The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge: but fools despise wisdom and instruction.” (Proverbs 1:7, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Des HERRN Furcht ist Anfang der Erkenntnis.* Solomon teaches that true knowledge begins with reverence for God. Notice der Erkenntnis: knowledge is feminine in German.

UNIT 4 · IN DER SCHULE: VERBEN UND UHRZEIT · LESSON 4.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

4.2 Ich lerne: Regular Verbs and School Subjects

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate any regular verb in the present tense.
- Handle verbs with stems in -t and -d (arbeiten, finden) and -s, -ß, -z (heißen, tanzen).
- Name school subjects and say what you study.
- Read Proverbs 22:6 in German.

> **Warm-up.** What do you study? Math, history, science, reading, music? Which do you like best? Today you learn to say what you do every day in German, with the verbs that most German verbs follow.

WATCH

Learn Regular Verbs in the Present Tense in German - A1 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 7:41

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GDLwaO3WfjM

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on endings.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on regular verbs in the present tense, about seven and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

LERNEN in the Present Tense - Mastering German Verbs

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 2:30

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=aGJb3G3C07Q

Session 2: a quick drill of lernen.

KEY TERMS

das Verb
The verb (dahs VAIRP).

der Stamm
The stem (dehr SHTAHM).

die Endung
The ending (dee EN-doong).

das Fach / die Fächer
The school subject / subjects (dahs FAHKH / dee FEKH-er).

der Knabe
The boy (old word; today der Junge) (dehr KNAH-buh).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

lernen
LAIR-nen
verb
to learn, study

machen
MAH-khen
verb
to do, make

spielen
SHPEE-len
verb
to play

arbeiten
AR-bye-ten
verb
to work

schreiben
SHRY-ben
verb
to write

beten
BAY-ten
verb
to pray

das Fach
dahs FAHKH
das · noun
school subject

das Lieblingsfach
dahs LEEP-lings-fahkh
das · noun
favorite subject

hören
HÖ-ren
verb
to hear

fragen
FRAH-gen
verb
to ask

CORE IDEAS

The story. Martin Luther cared deeply about schools. In 1524 he wrote a letter To the Councilmen of All Cities in Germany, urging every town to open and support Christian schools for boys and girls, so that they might read the Scriptures and serve God in church, home and city. Wherever the Reformation spread, schools followed. Luther knew the truth of the proverb: **Wie man einen Knaben gewöhnt, so läßt er nicht davon, wenn er alt wird** (train up a child in the way he should go: and when he is old, he will not depart from it).

How German works: regular verbs. Remove -en from the infinitive and add the endings **-e, -st, -t, -en, -t, -en**: **lernen → ich lerne, du lernst, er/sie/es lernt, wir lernen, ihr lernt, sie/Sie lernen.** Learn these: **machen** (to do, make), **spielen** (to play), **schreiben** (to write), **hören** (to hear), **singen** (to sing), **beten** (to pray), **fragen** (to ask), **sagen** (to say), **kaufen** (to buy), **besuchen** (to visit), **studieren** (to study at university).

How German works: special stems. If the stem ends in -t or -d, add an e before -st and -t so you can say it: **arbeiten → du arbeitest, er arbeitet, ihr arbeitet**; **finden → du findest, er findet**; also antworten, beten (er betet). If the stem ends in -s, -ß or -z, the du form adds only -t: **heißen → du heißt; tanzen → du tanzt.** German has one present tense for three English ones: **ich lerne** = I learn, I am learning, I do learn.

How German works: school subjects. Mathe (Mathematik), **Deutsch, Englisch, Geschichte** (history), **Erdkunde** (geography), **Biologie, Physik, Chemie, Musik, Kunst** (art), **Sport** (P.E.), **Religion. Was lernst du? — Ich lerne Mathe und Deutsch. Mein Lieblingsfach ist Geschichte** (my favorite subject is history).

ACTIVITY

Verb wheel

Make a turning verb wheel to practice endings.

You will need

- Two paper plates (one smaller, or cut one down)
- A brass fastener
- Markers

Steps

1. On the large plate write the six pronouns around the edge.
2. On the small plate write twelve regular verb stems (lern-, spiel-, mach-, arbeit-, …) and cut a window to show one pronoun at a time.
3. Fasten the plates and turn: say the full form for each combination (du arbeitest!).
4. Write twenty forms from the wheel in your notebook.

Tips

- Add a sentence with a school subject for each verb: Wir lernen Geschichte.
- Time yourself: how many correct forms in one minute?

Check your work

- ☐ My wheel works and has twelve verbs.
- ☐ I can give the right form for any pronoun, including -et and -est verbs.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the endings chart with lernen and arbeiten.
2. List twelve regular verbs with their meanings.
3. Write the school subjects and your timetable for one day.
4. Copy Proverbs 22:6 in German and English.

> **From history.** The German word Kindergarten (children's garden) came into English from Friedrich Fröbel, who opened the first kindergarten in Thuringia in 1840; a German immigrant, Margarethe Schurz, opened the first one in America in Wisconsin in 1856.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can narrate what each person is doing around the house in German: Papa arbeitet, Mama liest, ich lerne.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Conjugate spielen for du and ihr.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Stem spiel-; du adds -st, ihr adds -t.

Answer: du spielst, ihr spielt.

Example 2. Say: He works and she prays.

▼ **Show solution**

1. arbeit- and bet- end in -t: add -et.

Answer: Er arbeitet und sie betet.

Example 3. Say: What are you (du) learning? — I am learning history.

▼ **Show solution**

1. One present tense for am learning.

Answer: Was lernst du? — Ich lerne Geschichte.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is the ich ending?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   -e.

2. Easy What is the wir ending?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   -en.

3. Easy What is Geschichte?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   History.

4. Medium Conjugate machen for all persons.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   ich mache, du machst, er macht, wir machen, ihr macht, sie machen.

5. Medium Say: You (du) find the book.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Du findest das Buch.

6. Medium Say: What is your favorite subject?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Was ist dein Lieblingsfach?

7. Hard Say: We sing, pray and learn every day.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wir singen, beten und lernen jeden Tag.

8. Hard Translate Proverbs 22:6 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   As one trains (accustoms) a boy, so he will not leave it when he is old (KJV: Train up a child in the way he should go: and when he is old, he will not depart from it).

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying du arbeitst. Stems in -t add an e: du arbeitest.
- Saying ich bin lernen for I am learning. German has one present: ich lerne.
- Saying du heißst. With -ß stems, du adds only -t: du heißt.

Make it a game · Verben-Würfel. Roll a die: 1 = ich, 2 = du, 3 = er/sie, 4 = wir, 5 = ihr, 6 = sie/Sie. The parent calls a verb; the student rolls and conjugates it in a sentence. Arbeiten, finden and beten score double.

Scripture. “Train up a child in the way he should go: and when he is old, he will not depart from it.” (Proverbs 22:6, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *Wie man einen Knaben gewöhnt, so läßt er nicht davon, wenn er alt wird.* Solomon teaches that early training lasts a lifetime. Luther used gewöhnt (accustoms) and alt wird (grows old).

UNIT 4 · IN DER SCHULE: VERBEN UND UHRZEIT · LESSON 4.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

4.3 Wie spät ist es? Time, Days and Word Order

OBJECTIVES

- Ask and tell the time: Wie spät ist es? Es ist halb acht.
- Say when something happens: um acht Uhr, am Montag.
- Name the days of the week and parts of the day.
- Put the verb second in every main clause.

Warm-up. When does your day begin? When do you eat lunch? When do you go to church? Germans are famous for being on time. Today you learn to tell time, and the rule that governs every German sentence.

WATCH

How to Tell Time in German - A1 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 8:08

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Xi3irLjbu7A

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on time. Draw each clock Jenny shows.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on telling time, about eight minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn the Days of the Week in German with Pronunciation Tips and Easy Sentences - A1

lingoni GERMAN · 6:41

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Qb0SBekEmLo

Session 2 or 3: the days of the week.

KEY TERMS

die Uhr
The clock; o'clock (dee OOR).

Wie spät ist es?
What time is it? (vee SHPAYT ist es)

halb
Half (to the next hour) (HAHLP).

das Viertel
The quarter (dahs FEER-tel).

die Stunde
The hour (dee SHTOON-duh).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

die Uhr
dee OOR
die · noun
clock; o'clock

halb
HAHLP
adverb
half

das Viertel
dahs FEER-tel
das · noun
quarter

nach / vor
NAHKH / FOR
prepositions
after / before

der Montag
dehr MOHN-tahk
der · noun
Monday

der Sonntag
dehr ZON-tahk
der · noun
Sunday

am Morgen / am Abend
ahm MOR-gen / ahm AH-bent
phrases
in the morning / evening

die Zeit
dee TSITE
die · noun
time

die Stunde
dee SHTOON-duh
die · noun
hour; lesson

der Samstag
dehr ZAHMS-tahk
der · noun
Saturday

CORE IDEAS

The story. In the 1500s, Nuremberg craftsmen made some of the first watches small enough to carry, and German towns were proud of their great clocks: the great astronomical clock of Strasbourg Cathedral, then a German-speaking city, shows the hours and the planets, and today at noon the apostles pass before the figure of Christ. But Solomon reminds us that our time belongs to God: **Ein jegliches hat seine Zeit, und alles Vornehmen unter dem Himmel hat seine Stunde** (to every thing there is a season, and a time to every purpose under the heaven).

How German works: telling time. Wie spät ist es? / Wie viel Uhr ist es? — Es ist acht Uhr. Es ist Viertel nach acht (8:15). **Es ist halb neun** (8:30: half way to nine!). **Es ist Viertel vor neun** (8:45). **Es ist zehn nach acht** (8:10), **zwanzig vor neun** (8:40). Careful: **halb neun** is 8:30, not 9:30. Timetables use the 24-hour clock: **Der Zug fährt um 14.30 Uhr** (vierzehn Uhr dreißig).

How German works: when. um with clock times: **um acht Uhr**; **am** with days and parts of the day: **am Montag, am Morgen, am Vormittag, am Mittag, am Nachmittag, am Abend**, but **in der Nacht**. The days: **Montag, Dienstag, Mittwoch, Donnerstag, Freitag, Samstag** (in the north also **Sonnabend**), **Sonntag**. All are masculine (der Montag). Every day: **montags, sonntags**.

How German works: the verb is second. In every main clause, the conjugated verb is the second element. If the sentence begins with something other than the subject, the subject moves after the verb: **Ich lerne am Montag Deutsch. → Am Montag lerne ich Deutsch. → Deutsch lerne ich am Montag. Um sieben Uhr frühstücken wir. Sonntags gehen wir in die Kirche.** Time usually comes before place: **Ich gehe um neun Uhr in die Schule.**

ACTIVITY

Paper plate clock and weekly schedule

Make a clock and a weekly schedule, then quiz each other.

You will need

- A paper plate, card for hands, a brass fastener
- Paper and markers

Steps

1. Make a clock with movable hands.
2. Set it to ten different times and say each one aloud in German; let a parent set times for you too.
3. Write your weekly schedule in German: Am Montag um acht Uhr lerne ich Mathe.
4. Read the schedule aloud, checking that every verb is second.

Tips

- Add the 24-hour times for a train timetable.
- Add the times of your church services: Sonntags um zehn Uhr gehen wir in die Kirche.

Check your work

- ☐ I can tell any time to the quarter hour.
- ☐ Every sentence in my schedule has the verb second.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Draw clocks for 3:00, 3:15, 3:30, 3:45 and write each time in German.
2. Copy the days of the week and the parts of the day.
3. Write five sentences beginning with a time word.
4. Copy Ecclesiastes 3:1 in German and English.

> **From history.** Mittwoch means mid-week, and Sonnabend means Sunday eve; Donnerstag is named for the old Germanic thunder god, just as English Thursday is.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can announce every meal and event this week with the time in German: Um sechs Uhr essen wir!

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say 6:30 in German.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Half way to seven: halb sieben.

Answer: Es ist halb sieben.

Example 2. Say 2:45.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Quarter before three.

Answer: Es ist Viertel vor drei.

Example 3. Begin with Am Sonntag: Wir besuchen Oma am Sonntag.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Time first, verb second, subject third.

Answer: Am Sonntag besuchen wir Oma.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Ask what time it is.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wie spät ist es? (Wie viel Uhr ist es?)

2. Easy What day comes after Mittwoch?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Donnerstag.

3. Easy What is Es ist halb drei?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   It is 2:30.

4. Medium Write 11:15 and 11:45 in German.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Viertel nach elf; Viertel vor zwölf.

5. Medium Say: On Friday I play soccer.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Am Freitag spiele ich Fußball.

6. Medium Say 18.30 Uhr in words.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   achtzehn Uhr dreißig.

7. Hard Rewrite starting with Um acht Uhr: Wir beten und frühstücken um acht Uhr.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Um acht Uhr beten und frühstücken wir.

8. Hard Translate Ecclesiastes 3:1 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Every thing has its time, and every purpose under heaven has its hour.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Reading halb neun as 9:30. It means half to nine: 8:30.
- Writing Am Montag ich lerne. The verb must be second: Am Montag lerne ich.
- Using um with days. Use am with days: am Montag.

> **Make it a game · Uhrzeit-Rennen.** The parent sets the paper clock; the student says the time in German before the parent counts to five. Then the student sets the clock for a sentence: Um halb acht frühstücke ich. Ten right wins.

> **Scripture.** “To every thing there is a season, and a time to every purpose under the heaven:” (Ecclesiastes 3:1, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Ein jegliches hat seine Zeit, und alles Vornehmen unter dem Himmel hat seine Stunde.* The Preacher teaches that God has appointed a time for everything. Luther used Zeit (time) and Stunde (hour).

UNIT 5

Guten Appetit! Essen, Akkusativ, Café

Lesson 5.1 names foods, drinks and the three meals (das Frühstück, das Mittagessen, das Abendessen), conjugates essen (du isst, er isst) and trinken, and studies Flegel’s small, perfect still life of a simple meal, with Matthew 6:11.

Lesson 5.2 teaches the accusative case: only masculine nouns change (der → den, ein → einen, kein → keinen, mein → meinen), with haben, brauchen, kaufen and essen, and John 6:35. Lesson 5.3 orders in a café and a bakery with ich möchte and ich hätte gern, asks Was kostet das? and counts euros and cents, with 1 Corinthians 10:31.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–4.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name thirty foods and drinks with their articles.
- ☐ I can conjugate essen, trinken and möchten.
- ☐ I can use the accusative for masculine direct objects.
- ☐ I can order politely and pay in a café.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

5.1	**Das Essen: Food, Drink and Meals**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
5.2	**Den, einen, keinen: The Accusative**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
5.3	**Im Café: Ordering and Prices**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 5 test

Unit 5 test. Questions 1–2 are oral. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Order breakfast for yourself and a friend in a café, and ask for the bill.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Say what you eat for breakfast, lunch and supper.

3. **5 pts**
   Conjugate essen for ich, du, er, wir, ihr.

4. **5 pts**
   Write the article: ___ Brot, ___ Apfel, ___ Milch, ___ Käse, ___ Ei.

5. **5 pts**
   Fill in the accusative: Ich habe ___ Apfel (a). Er kauft ___ Saft (the). Wir brauchen ___ Tisch (no). Sie isst ___ Kuchen (her). Du trinkst ___ Milch (the).

6. **5 pts**

   Which noun is the subject and which the direct object? Den Kuchen isst der Junge.

7. **5 pts**

   Conjugate möchten for ich, du, er, wir.

8. **5 pts**

   Write the prices in words: 2,50 €; 4,90 €; 12,00 €.

9. **5 pts**

   Write Matthew 6:11 in German and translate.

10. **5 pts**

    Describe Flegel's still life in three German sentences.

ANSWER KEY

1. Guten Morgen. Ich möchte ein Brötchen und einen Kakao, bitte. Mein Freund möchte … Die Rechnung, bitte. / Zahlen, bitte.
2. Zum Frühstück esse ich … Zum Mittagessen esse ich … Zum Abendessen …
3. ich esse, du isst, er isst, wir essen, ihr esst.
4. das, der, die, der, das.
5. einen, den, keinen, ihren, die.
6. Subject: der Junge. Direct object: den Kuchen. (The boy eats the cake.)
7. ich möchte, du möchtest, er möchte, wir möchten.
8. zwei Euro fünfzig; vier Euro neunzig; zwölf Euro.
9. Unser täglich Brot gib uns heute. Give us this day our daily bread.
10. For example: Auf dem Tisch ist ein Teller mit zwei Eiern. Da ist auch ein Brot. Die Blume ist rot.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: DAS CAFÉ (A CAFÉ ROLE-PLAY AND MENU)

Design a German café menu (Speisekarte) with at least twelve items and prices in euros, then run a café at home for the family: greet the guests, take their orders in German, serve, and bring the bill (Die Rechnung, bitte — Das macht zwölf Euro fünfzig). Write the dialogue in your notebook first, with at least six accusative phrases.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Menu	Twelve items with correct articles and prices.
Accusative	At least six correct accusative phrases.
Courtesy	Greetings, bitte, danke and Sie used naturally.
Numbers	Prices said and totaled correctly.

UNIT 5 · GUTEN APPETIT! ESSEN, AKKUSATIV, CAFÉ · LESSON 5.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

5.1 Das Essen: Food, Drink and Meals

OBJECTIVES

- Name thirty foods and drinks with their articles.
- Name the three meals and say what you eat.
- Conjugate essen and trinken.
- Describe Flegel's Still Life with Fried Eggs.

> **Warm-up.** What did you have for breakfast? Germans love bread: there are more than three thousand kinds of German bread, and the breakfast Brötchen (little bread roll) is a national treasure. Today you learn to talk about food.

WATCH

The Verb "to eat" in German - A1 [with Jacqueline]

lingoni GERMAN · 6:34

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7MY8hQYwCto

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on essen.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the verb essen (to eat), about six and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

German Lesson (25) - frühstücken · zu Mittag essen · zu Abend essen - A2

lingoni GERMAN · 5:55

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xpx4YksTAgs

Session 2 or 3: frühstücken, zu Mittag essen and zu Abend essen.

KEY TERMS

das Essen
Food; meal (dahs ES-sen).

das Frühstück
Breakfast (dahs FRÜ-shtük).

das Mittagessen / das Abendessen
Lunch / supper (MIT-tahk-es-sen / AH-bent-es-sen).

das Stillleben
The still life (painting) (dahs SHTIL-lay-ben).

täglich
Daily (TAYK-likh).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

das Brot
dahs BROHT
das · noun
bread

das Brötchen
dahs BRÖT-khen
das · noun
roll

der Käse
dehr KAY-zuh
der · noun
cheese

das Ei
dahs EYE
das · noun
egg

der Apfel
dehr AHP-fel
der · noun
apple

die Milch
dee MILKH
die · noun
milk

essen
ES-sen
verb (e → i)
to eat

trinken
TRING-ken
verb
to drink

das Frühstück
dahs FRÜ-shtük
das · noun
breakfast

die Wurst
dee VOORST
die · noun
sausage

CORE IDEAS

The story. Georg Flegel was born in 1566 in Olmütz, in Moravia, and spent most of his life in Frankfurt am Main, where he became one of the first German painters of still lifes: paintings of food, flowers and objects on a table. Around 1630 he painted a small picture of a simple meal: a round loaf of bread, two fried eggs on a blue-and-white porcelain plate with a knife across it, a tall glass, and a single red carnation in a glass vase. A tiny ladybug crawls on the table. Nothing is grand, yet everything is painted with loving care. In Flegel's day, a plain table of bread and eggs reminded

viewers to thank God for daily bread, as Jesus taught: **Unser täglich Brot gib uns heute.**

How German works: food and drink. das Brot (bread), **das Brötchen** (roll), **die Butter, der Käse** (cheese), **die Wurst** (sausage, cold cuts), **der Schinken** (ham), **das Ei / die Eier, die Marmelade** (jam), **der Honig, das Müsli; das Fleisch** (meat), **das Hähnchen** (chicken), **der Fisch, die Kartoffel, der Reis, die Nudeln, das Gemüse** (vegetables), **der Salat, die Suppe; das Obst** (fruit), **der Apfel, die Banane, die Orange; der Kuchen** (cake). Drinks: **das Wasser, die Milch, der Saft** (juice), **der Kaffee, der Tee, der Kakao** (hot chocolate).

How German works: essen and trinken. essen changes e to i and its du form is the same as er: **ich esse, du isst, er/sie isst, wir essen, ihr esst, sie essen**. **trinken** is regular: **ich trinke, du trinkst, er trinkt… Zum Frühstück esse ich ein Brötchen mit Honig und trinke Milch.**

Meals in Germany. Traditionally the warm meal was **das Mittagessen** at noon; supper, **das Abendbrot** (evening bread), was bread with cheese and cold cuts. On Sunday afternoon many families still gather for **Kaffee und Kuchen**. At the start of a meal Germans say **Guten Appetit!**, and Christian families pray first, often the old table prayer: **Komm, Herr Jesus, sei du unser Gast, und segne, was du uns bescheret hast** (Come, Lord Jesus, be our guest, and bless what you have given us).

PICTURE STUDY



Still Life with Fried Eggs, Georg Flegel, about 1630–1635 · Oil on panel · Bavarian State Painting Collections

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Georg Flegel (1566–1638) painted many still lifes in oil and watercolor and was a master of small details: the shine on the glass, the soft whites of the eggs, the crumbly crust. The ladybug is his little joke and test: look closely, and you are rewarded. The dark background makes the simple food glow like a gift on the table.

Look closely

- Name every food and object you can see in German.
- Find the ladybug. Why might Flegel have painted it?
- What colors are the plate and the flower?
- Where does the light come from?

Talk about it

1. Why would someone paint a simple meal so carefully?
2. What would you put in a still life of your own breakfast?

ACTIVITY

Kitchen tour and grocery list

Label foods in your kitchen and write a German grocery list.

You will need

- Sticky notes in blue, red and green
- Paper

Steps

1. Label fifteen foods in your kitchen with der, die or das.
2. Write a German shopping list for one day's meals (Frühstück, Mittagessen, Abendessen).
3. Tell a parent in German what you will eat at each meal: Zum Frühstück esse ich…
4. Learn and say the table prayer Komm, Herr Jesus before supper.

Tips

- Photograph your breakfast arranged like Flegel's still life and label it.
- Find three German breads online or at a bakery and describe them.

Check your work

☐ I labeled fifteen foods correctly.

☐ I described all three meals in German.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy thirty foods and drinks in three columns (der, die, das).
2. Copy the essen chart.
3. Write what you eat at each meal.
4. Copy Matthew 6:11 and the table prayer in German and English.

> **From history.** German immigrants brought pretzels, sauerkraut, bratwurst, frankfurters and hamburgers (named for the city of Hamburg) to America, and the word delicatessen is German too.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can pray Komm, Herr Jesus before every meal this week, and talk about the food only in German.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: You (du) eat an apple.

▼ **Show solution**

1. essen: du isst.

Answer: Du isst einen Apfel.

Example 2. Say: For breakfast I eat bread with butter.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Zum Frühstück first, verb second.

Answer: Zum Frühstück esse ich Brot mit Butter.

Example 3. What do Germans say before eating?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Wishing a good appetite.

Answer: Guten Appetit!

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is das Frühstück?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Breakfast.

2. Easy Article for Milch and Käse?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   die, der.

3. Easy What is das Obst?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Fruit.

4. Medium Conjugate essen for du and er.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   du isst, er isst.

5. Medium Say: We drink water and juice.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wir trinken Wasser und Saft.

6. Medium What is Kaffee und Kuchen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The German afternoon custom of coffee and cake, especially on Sunday.

7. Hard Say the table prayer Komm, Herr Jesus in German and translate it.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Komm, Herr Jesus, sei du unser Gast, und segne, was du uns bescheret hast.
   Come, Lord Jesus, be our guest, and bless what you have given us.

8. Hard Describe Flegel's painting in three German sentences.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Das ist ein Teller mit Eiern. Da ist auch ein Brot. Die Blume ist rot.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying du esst. Essen changes its vowel: du isst.
- Saying er esst. The er form is isst.
- Forgetting that das Obst and das Gemüse are singular: Das Obst ist frisch.

> **Make it a game · Ich esse gern….** Go around the table: the first player says Ich esse einen Apfel. The next repeats and adds one: Ich esse einen Apfel und ein Brot. Continue until someone forgets an item or an article.

> **Scripture.** “Give us this day our daily bread.” (Matthew 6:11, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Unser täglich Brot gib uns heute.* In the Lord’s Prayer Jesus teaches us to ask our Father for each day’s bread. Luther’s words are prayed in every German-speaking church: Unser täglich Brot gib uns heute.

UNIT 5 · GUTEN APPETIT! ESSEN, AKKUSATIV, CAFÉ · LESSON 5.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

5.2 Den, einen, keinen: The Accusative

OBJECTIVES

- Find the subject and the direct object in a sentence.
- Use the accusative articles: den, einen, keinen, meinen.
- Use the accusative with haben, brauchen, kaufen, essen, sehen and möchten.
- Read John 6:35 in German.

> **Warm-up.** In English, word order tells who does what: The dog bites the man is very different from The man bites the dog. German marks the roles with the article instead, so the words can move around. Today you learn the second case: the accusative.

WATCH

Learn the Accusative Case in German - Part 1: The Direct Object - A1/A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 9:43

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fd_5Wjsf9xo

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on the accusative.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the accusative case and the direct object, about nine and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

The German Verb BRAUCHEN - German Accusative Case Practice - A1/A2

lingoni GERMAN · 6:06

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wGhpDlvWDyk

Session 2 or 3: practice with brauchen.

KEY TERMS

der Akkusativ
The accusative case: the direct object (dehr AHK-koo-zah-teef).

der Nominativ
The nominative case: the subject (dehr NOH-mee-nah-teef).

das Objekt
The object (dahs op-YEKT).

brauchen
To need (BROW-khen).

hungern
To hunger, be hungry (HOONG-ern).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

der Akkusativ
dehr AHK-koo-zah-teef
der · noun
accusative case

brauchen
BROW-khen
verb
to need

kaufen
KOW-fen
verb
to buy

sehen
ZAY-en
verb (e → ie)
to see

es gibt
es GIPT
phrase + acc.
there is, there are

den / einen / keinen
DAYN / EYE-nen / KINE-en
articles (acc. masc.)
the / a / no

ihn
EEN
pronoun (acc.)
him; it

mich / dich
MIKH / DIKH
pronouns (acc.)
me / you

der Nominativ
dehr NOH-mee-nah-teef
der · noun
nominative case

das Objekt
dahs op-YEKT
das · noun
object

CORE IDEAS

The story. The day after Jesus fed five thousand people with five barley loaves and two fishes, the crowd came looking for Him again, hoping for more bread. Jesus told them not to labor for food that perishes, but for food that endures to everlasting life. Then He said: **Ich bin das Brot des Lebens. Wer zu mir kommt, den wird nicht hungern** (I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger). Notice Luther's den: in old German, hunger takes the person as an object, as if hunger seizes him; in Christ, it never will.

How German works: subject and object. The subject does the action and is in the nominative: **Der Junge** isst. The direct object receives the action and is in the accusative: Der Junge isst **den Apfel**. Ask: Who eats? (subject: Wer?) What does he eat? (object: Wen? Was?)

How German works: the accusative articles. Only the masculine changes! **der → den, ein → einen, kein → keinen, mein → meinen** (also deinen, seinen, ihren, unseren, euren). Feminine, neuter and plural stay the same: **die Milch, das Brot, die Eier; eine Banane, ein Ei**. So: **Ich habe einen Bruder. Wir brauchen keinen Tisch. Er kauft den Käse. Ich sehe meinen Vater.**

How German works: free word order. Because the article marks the object, German can put it first for emphasis, with the verb still second: **Den Kuchen isst der Junge** (the boy eats the cake: it is the cake he eats). **Es gibt** (there is, there are) always takes the accusative: **Es gibt einen Apfel.** The pronouns change too: **ich → mich, du → dich, er → ihn, wir → uns, ihr → euch**: **Ich liebe dich. Siehst du ihn?**

ACTIVITY

Accusative shopping game

Play store with real items, using the accusative for everything you buy.

You will need

- Ten food items or pictures with price tags in euros
- Play money (optional)

Steps

1. Set up a store; mark masculine items with a blue tag.
2. The customer says: Ich brauche einen Apfel, einen Käse und eine Milch. Ich kaufe den Saft.
3. The storekeeper answers: Wir haben keinen Käse, aber wir haben einen Joghurt.
4. Write the best shopping dialogue in your notebook and underline every accusative.

Tips

- Add pronouns: Möchten Sie den Kuchen? — Ja, ich nehme ihn.
- Begin some sentences with the object: Den Apfel kaufe ich.

Check your work

☐ I used einen, den and keinen correctly.

☐ I can explain why only masculine nouns change.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the nominative and accusative articles side by side.
2. Write ten sentences with masculine objects: Ich habe einen..., Ich brauche keinen...
3. Copy the accusative pronouns.
4. Copy John 6:35 in German and English.

> **From history.** German has four cases (nominative, accusative, dative, genitive), as Old English once did; English still keeps cases in its pronouns: he and him, she and her, who and whom.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can read John 6 together in the Luther Bible and find every accusative object.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: I need a pencil.

▼ **Show solution**

1. der Bleistift is masculine: ein → einen.

Answer: Ich brauche einen Bleistift.

Example 2. Say: He sees the cat. He sees the dog.

▼ **Show solution**

1. die Katze stays; der Hund → den Hund.

Answer: Er sieht die Katze. Er sieht den Hund.

Example 3. Begin with the object: Der Mann kauft den Tisch.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Object first, verb second, subject after.

Answer: Den Tisch kauft der Mann.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Accusative of der?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   den.

2. Easy Accusative of ein (masculine)?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   einen.

3. Easy Does die change in the accusative?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   No.

4. Medium Fill in: Ich habe ___ Hund (a). Wir essen ___ Salat (the).

   ▼ **Show answer**

   einen, den.

5. Medium Fill in: Sie kauft ___ Brot (a). Er hat ___ Bruder (no).

   ▼ **Show answer**

   ein, keinen.

6. Medium Say: Do you (du) see him?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Siehst du ihn?

7. Hard Who eats whom? Den Bären sieht der Jäger.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The hunter sees the bear (den Bären is the object).

8. Hard Translate John 6:35b from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   He that cometh to me shall never hunger.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Changing feminine or neuter articles: einen Banane. Only masculine changes: eine Banane.
- Putting the subject in the accusative: Den Junge isst. The subject stays nominative: Der Junge isst.
- Forgetting that es gibt takes the accusative: Es gibt einen Park.

Make it a game · Wen oder was?. The parent says a sentence with the object first: Den Apfel isst die Mutter! The student must say who does what in English. Then switch: the student makes object-first sentences to trick the parent.

Scripture. "And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst." (John 6:35, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *Wer zu mir kommt, den wird nicht hungern* Jesus calls Himself the bread of life. Luther wrote Wer zu mir kommt, den wird nicht hungern, with den in the accusative.

UNIT 5 · GUTEN APPETIT! ESSEN, AKKUSATIV, CAFÉ · LESSON 5.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

5.3 Im Café: Ordering and Prices

OBJECTIVES

- Order politely with ich möchte and ich hätte gern.
- Ask Was kostet das? and understand prices in euros.
- Ask for and pay the bill.
- Read 1 Corinthians 10:31 in German.

Warm-up. Imagine stepping into a bakery in a German village at seven in the morning, with the smell of fresh rolls and coffee. What would you say? Today you learn exactly that.

WATCH

Ordering Food & Drinks in German 🍰☕ | Essential Phrases for A1 Learners

lingoni GERMAN · 3:19

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Veao2W0O8Js

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on ordering.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on essential phrases for ordering food and drinks, about three and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn German | Listening Practice - Getting a Table at a Restaurant in Germany

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 3:17

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4wJTgyCSSZU

Session 2 or 3: a listening practice about getting a table.

KEY TERMS

das Café

The café (dahs kah-FAY).

die Bäckerei

The bakery (dee bek-keh-RYE).

die Speisekarte

The menu (dee SHPY-zuh-kar-tuh).

die Rechnung

The bill (dee REKH-noong).

kosten

To cost (KOS-ten).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

das Café
dahs kah-FAY
das · noun
café

die Bäckerei
dee bek-keh-RYE
die · noun
bakery

die Speisekarte
dee SHPY-zuh-kar-tuh
die · noun
menu

die Rechnung
dee REKH-noong
die · noun
bill

möchten
MÖKH-ten
verb form
would like

kosten
KOS-ten
verb
to cost

der Euro
dehr OY-roh
der · noun
euro

das Stück
dahs SHTÜK
das · noun
piece

der Tee
dehr TAY
der · noun
tea

zahlen
TSAH-len
verb
to pay

CORE IDEAS

The story. The Christians in Corinth argued about food: could a believer eat meat that had been sold in the market after being offered to idols? Paul answered with care for weaker consciences and gave a rule for every meal and every action: **Ihr esset nun oder trinket oder was ihr tut, so tut es alles zu Gottes Ehre** (whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God). Even ordering a roll in a bakery, done with courtesy and thanks, can honor God.

How German works: ordering. The waiter asks: **Was möchten Sie? / Was darf es sein? / Bitte schön?** You answer: **Ich möchte einen Kakao, bitte.** or **Ich hätte gern ein**

Stück Apfelkuchen. or simply **Einen Tee, bitte.** Notice the accusative: einen Kakao, einen Tee. **möchten**: ich möchte, du möchtest, er möchte, wir möchten, ihr möchtet, sie/Sie möchten.

How German works: prices. Germany, Austria and most of Europe use **der Euro** (100 **Cent**); Switzerland uses **der Franken**. Prices are written with a comma: **2,50 €** = **zwei Euro fünfzig. Was kostet das? — Das kostet drei Euro zwanzig. Wie viel kostet der Kuchen?**

How German works: paying. Die Rechnung, bitte! or **Zahlen, bitte!** The waiter asks: **Zusammen oder getrennt?** (together or separately?) — **Das macht zwölf Euro.** It is usual to round up a little as a tip: **Stimmt so** (keep the change). At the bakery: **Ich hätte gern vier Brötchen und ein Vollkornbrot. — Sonst noch etwas?** (anything else?) **— Nein, danke. Das ist alles.**

ACTIVITY

Bakery role-play

Run a German bakery at home with real or paper goods and prices.

You will need

- Bread, rolls and pastries (or drawings) with price tags in euros
- Paper money and coins
- A bell for the door

Steps

1. Make price tags in German: das Brötchen 0,40 €; der Apfelkuchen 2,80 €…
2. Play the baker and the customer, then switch: greet, order with ich hätte gern, ask Was kostet das?, pay and take leave.
3. Practice Sonst noch etwas? — Nein, danke, das ist alles.
4. Write the dialogue in your notebook.

Tips

- Add a café table and order drinks with möchten.
- Total the bill in German aloud.

Check your work

☐ I ordered three items politely with correct accusatives.

☐ I said and understood every price.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the ordering phrases and the möchten chart.
2. Write a café menu with eight items and prices in words.
3. Write a six-line café dialogue.
4. Copy 1 Corinthians 10:31 in German and English.

> **From history.** Vienna is famous for its coffeehouses; legend says the city learned to brew coffee from sacks left behind by the Turkish army after the siege of Vienna in 1683, which was broken by Christian armies under the Polish king Jan Sobieski.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can visit a German bakery or deli (or a European bakery) and let the student order in German.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Order a hot chocolate politely.

▼ **Show solution**

1. der Kakao: einen Kakao.

Answer: Ich möchte einen Kakao, bitte.

Example 2. Say 3,80 € in words.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Euros, then cents without the word Cent.

Answer: drei Euro achtzig.

Example 3. Ask for the bill.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Two common ways.

Answer: Die Rechnung, bitte! (Zahlen, bitte!)

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is die Speisekarte?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The menu.

2. Easy Ask what something costs.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Was kostet das?

3. Easy What does Stimmt so mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Keep the change.

4. Medium Order a piece of cake and a tea.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich hätte gern ein Stück Kuchen und einen Tee, bitte.

5. Medium Say 15,50 € in words.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   fünfzehn Euro fünfzig.

6. Medium What does Zusammen oder getrennt? mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Together or separately (paying)?

7. Hard Write a four-line bakery dialogue.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Guten Morgen! Was darf es sein? — Ich hätte gern fünf Brötchen. — Sonst noch etwas? — Nein, danke. Was kostet das? — Zwei Euro, bitte.

8. Hard Translate 1 Corinthians 10:31 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Ich will einen Kaffee. Will sounds rude; say Ich möchte or Ich hätte gern.
- Saying ein Kakao when ordering. Kakao is masculine: einen Kakao.
- Reading 2,50 € as two comma fifty. Say zwei Euro fünfzig.

> **Make it a game · Was kostet das?.** The parent shows a price card (3,70 €); the student says the price in words in under five seconds. Then the student adds two prices aloud: Zwei Euro plus ein Euro fünfzig macht drei Euro fünfzig.

> **Scripture.** “Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.” (1 Corinthians 10:31, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Ihr esset nun oder trinket oder was ihr tut, so tut es alles zu Gottes Ehre.* Paul teaches that eating and drinking, like everything else, should be done to God’s glory. Notice esset and trinket: the old ihr forms of essen and trinken.

UNIT 6

In der Stadt: gehen, fahren, Wege

Lesson 6.1 names the places in a town (die Kirche, der Bahnhof, die Bäckerei, die Post, das Rathaus …), says what there is with es gibt and where things are with wo ist?, and studies Gaertner’s Parochialstraße in Berlin, with Matthew 5:14.

Lesson 6.2 conjugates gehen and fahren (ich fahre, du fährst, er fährt), names means of transport (mit dem Bus, mit dem Zug, zu Fuß), and says where to (nach Berlin, nach Hause, zur Schule, in die Kirche), with Psalm 121:8. Lesson 6.3 asks and gives directions with links, rechts, geradeaus and the imperative for Sie and du, with John 14:6. The midterm follows this unit.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–5.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name twenty places in a town with their articles.
- ☐ I can say what there is in my town with es gibt.
- ☐ I can conjugate gehen and fahren and say how and where I travel.
- ☐ I can ask for and give simple directions with the imperative.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

6.1	**Was gibt es in der Stadt? Places in Town**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
6.2	**Wir fahren: gehen, fahren and Transport**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
6.3	**Wie komme ich zum…? Directions and the Imperative**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 6 test

Unit 6 test. Questions 1–2 are oral. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Describe your town in four sentences with es gibt.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: The parent asks the way to the church. Give directions in three steps (Sie).

3. **5 pts**
   Write the article: ___ Bahnhof, ___ Kirche, ___ Rathaus, ___ Post, ___ Park.

4. **5 pts**
   Write with es gibt: a bank, a museum, no hospital.

5. **5 pts**
   Conjugate fahren for ich, du, er, wir, ihr.

6. **5 pts**

   Write: I go to school on foot. We go by bus to Munich.

7. **5 pts**

   Fill in nach, zu or in: ___ Hause; ___ Berlin; ___ die Kirche; ___ Oma.

8. **5 pts**

   Make imperatives for Sie and du: gehen (geradeaus), nehmen (den Bus).

9. **5 pts**

   Write John 14:6a in German and translate.

10. **5 pts**

    Describe Gaertner's Parochialstraße in three German sentences.

ANSWER KEY

1. For example: In meiner Stadt gibt es eine Kirche, einen Park, eine Bibliothek und einen Supermarkt.
2. For example: Gehen Sie geradeaus. Dann gehen Sie links. Die Kirche ist rechts.
3. der, die, das, die, der.
4. Es gibt eine Bank. Es gibt ein Museum. Es gibt kein Krankenhaus.
5. ich fahre, du fährst, er fährt, wir fahren, ihr fahrt.
6. Ich gehe zu Fuß zur Schule. Wir fahren mit dem Bus nach München.
7. nach; nach; in; zu.
8. Gehen Sie geradeaus! Geh geradeaus! Nehmen Sie den Bus! Nimm den Bus!
9. Ich bin der Weg und die Wahrheit und das Leben. I am the way, the truth, and the life.
10. For example: Das ist eine Straße in Berlin. Es gibt Häuser, Leute und zwei Hunde. Hinten ist eine Kirche.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: STADTFÜHRUNG (A TOWN TOUR)

Draw a map of your town or neighborhood with at least twelve places labeled in German, then give a guided tour in German: describe what there is (es gibt), how to get from place to place (gehen, fahren, links, rechts, geradeaus), and what you do in each place. Include your church and say when you go there. Present the tour aloud with the map.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Map	Twelve places with correct articles.
Directions	At least six correct directions and imperatives.
Verbs	gehen and fahren used correctly with nach, zu and in.
Delivery	Presented aloud, clear and confident.

UNIT 6 · IN DER STADT: GEHEN, FAHREN, WEGE · LESSON 6.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

6.1 Was gibt es in der Stadt? Places in Town

OBJECTIVES

- Name places in a town with their articles.
- Say what there is with es gibt + accusative.
- Ask and answer Wo ist …? with simple place words (hier, da, links, rechts).
- Describe Gaertner's The Parochialstraße in Berlin.

> **Warm-up.** What can you find in your town? A church, a post office, a library, a grocery store? Many old German towns are built around a market square, with the church and the town hall facing each other. Today you learn to name the places in a town.

WATCH

Let's talk about places in a city in German - Learn useful vocab and phrases! - A2 [with Jacqueline]

lingoni GERMAN · 9:09

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9YymkcjA0ok

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on places.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on places in a city, with useful vocabulary and phrases, about nine minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Showing a Friend Around Town in German | Daily German Conversations #23

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 4:09

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mRGzZDlqNQw

Session 2 or 3: showing a friend around town.

KEY TERMS

die Stadt
The city, town (dee SHTAHT).

das Dorf
The village (dahs DORF).

es gibt
There is, there are (+ accusative) (es GIPT).

der Marktplatz
The market square (dehr MARKT-plahts).

verborgen
Hidden (fair-BOR-gen).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

die Stadt
dee SHTAHT
die · noun
city, town

die Kirche
dee KEER-khuh
die · noun
church

der Bahnhof
dehr BAHN-hohf
der · noun
train station

das Rathaus
dahs RAHT-hows
das · noun
town hall

die Post
dee POST
die · noun
post office

die Bibliothek
dee bib-lee-oh-TAYK
die · noun
library

der Park
dehr PARK
der · noun
park

es gibt
es GIPT
phrase
there is, there are

das Dorf
dahs DORF
das · noun
village

der Marktplatz
dehr MARKT-plahts
der · noun
market square

CORE IDEAS

The story. In 1831 the Berlin painter Eduard Gaertner painted an ordinary morning in the Parochialstraße, a narrow old street in the heart of Berlin named after the nearby Parochial Church. He painted it so exactly that you can almost hear it: a craftsman in a leather apron stands in his doorway under a hanging shop sign shaped like a copper kettle; two men saw firewood in the middle of the cobblestones; two dogs sniff about; a woman stands on a doorstep; a man in a top hat reads the posters on a wall; a girl walks with a basket; a horse and carriage pass far down the

street. At the end of the street a church spire rises into the sky. Gaertner loved the plain streets of his city and the people who lived and worked in them.

How German works: places in town. die Kirche (church), **das Rathaus** (town hall), **der Marktplatz, der Bahnhof** (train station), **die Bushaltestelle** (bus stop), **die Post** (post office), **die Bank, die Bibliothek** (library), **das Museum, die Schule, das Krankenhaus** (hospital), **die Apotheke** (pharmacy), **der Supermarkt, die Bäckerei, die Metzgerei** (butcher shop), **das Restaurant, das Café, der Park, der Spielplatz** (playground), **das Schwimmbad** (swimming pool), **die Straße** (street), **die Brücke** (bridge).

How German works: es gibt. To say there is or there are, use **es gibt** with the accusative: **In meiner Stadt gibt es einen Park, eine Kirche und ein Museum. Es gibt keinen Bahnhof.** Ask: **Gibt es hier eine Apotheke? — Ja, da drüben** (over there).

How German works: wo? Wo ist die Post? — Die Post ist hier / da / links / rechts / da drüben / in der Hauptstraße. Jesus told His disciples: **Ihr seid das Licht der Welt. Es kann die Stadt, die auf einem Berge liegt, nicht verborgen sein** (ye are the light of the world. A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid).

PICTURE STUDY



The Parochialstraße in Berlin, Eduard Gaertner, 1831 · Oil on canvas · Alte Nationalgalerie, Berlin

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Eduard Gaertner (1801–1877) began as a painter of porcelain in the royal porcelain factory and became Berlin's great painter of streets and buildings. He paints every brick, sign and window with patience, and he fills his streets with ordinary people at work. Look at how the street narrows to the church spire: everything leads the eye there.

Look closely

- Find the shop sign shaped like a kettle. What might the craftsman make?
- Find the men sawing wood and the two dogs.
- Find the man in the top hat. What is he looking at?
- What is at the end of the street?

Talk about it

1. Name five things in the picture in German with es gibt.
2. How is this street like or unlike a street in your town?

ACTIVITY

Town map

Draw a map of your town or neighborhood with German labels.

You will need

- A large sheet of paper
- Colored pencils

Steps

1. Draw your neighborhood with at least twelve places: your house, church, school, stores, park.
2. Label each place in German with its article.
3. Write six sentences with es gibt and kein about your town.
4. Present your map: In meiner Stadt gibt es…

Tips

- Add a market square, a town hall and a church facing each other, as in an old German town.
- Mark places that are not there: Es gibt kein Schwimmbad.

Check your work

☐ My map has twelve correctly labeled places.

☐ I used es gibt with correct accusatives.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy twenty places in town in three columns (der, die, das).
2. Write eight sentences with es gibt.
3. Copy Matthew 5:14 in German and English.

> **From history.** Much of old Berlin, including the Parochial Church, was badly damaged or destroyed in the bombing of the Second World War; paintings like Gaertner's are now precious records of how the city looked.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can look at a map of their ancestors' German town together and name its places in German.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: In my town there is a library.

▼ **Show solution**

1. die Bibliothek: eine stays the same.
2. In meiner Stadt first, then gibt es.

Answer: In meiner Stadt gibt es eine Bibliothek.

Example 2. Say: There is no train station.

▼ **Show solution**

1. der Bahnhof → keinen Bahnhof.

Answer: Es gibt keinen Bahnhof.

Example 3. Ask: Is there a pharmacy here?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Gibt es + accusative.

Answer: Gibt es hier eine Apotheke?

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is der Bahnhof?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The train station.

2. Easy What is das Rathaus?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The town hall.

3. Easy What does es gibt mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   There is, there are.

4. Medium Article for Kirche, Park, Museum?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   die, der, das.

5. Medium Say: There is a park and a church.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Es gibt einen Park und eine Kirche.

6. Medium Ask where the post office is.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wo ist die Post?

7. Hard Describe Gaertner's street in three German sentences.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Das ist eine Straße in Berlin. Es gibt alte Häuser und viele Leute. Hinten ist eine Kirche.

8. Hard Translate Matthew 5:14 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ye are the light of the world. A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying es gibt ein Park. Es gibt takes the accusative: einen Park.
- Using es ist for there is. Use es gibt for what exists in a place.
- Forgetting the article: Wo ist Post? Say Wo ist die Post?

> **Make it a game · Ich sehe was, was du nicht siehst.** Play I spy with a town picture or Gaertner's painting: Ich sehe was, was du nicht siehst, und das ist rot! The other asks Ist das die Tür? Ist das das Schild? until the object is found, always with the article.

> **Scripture.** “Ye are the light of the world. A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid.” (Matthew 5:14, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Es kann die Stadt, die auf einem Berge liegt, nicht verborgen sein.* In the Sermon on the Mount Jesus calls His disciples the light of the world, like a city on a hill that everyone can see.

UNIT 6 · IN DER STADT: GEHEN, FAHREN, WEGE · LESSON 6.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

6.2 Wir fahren: gehen, fahren and Transport

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate gehen and fahren (a → ä) and nehmen (e → i).
- Name means of transport with mit dem / mit der and zu Fuß.
- Say where you are going with nach, zu and in.
- Read Psalm 121:8 in German.

> **Warm-up.** How do you get to church? To the store? To your grandparents’ house? In German there are two words for to go: one for going on foot and one for going in a vehicle. Today you learn both.

WATCH

Talking About Transportation in German

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 6:42

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XF_PcI0lUyM

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on transport.

Note: GermanPod101 on talking about transportation in German, about seven minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

FAHREN in the Present Tense - Mastering German Verbs

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 2:30

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VMHdmA0z1Vs

Session 2: a quick drill of fahren.

KEY TERMS

gehen

To go (on foot), walk (GAY-en).

fahren

To go (by vehicle), drive, ride (FAH-ren).

zu Fuß

On foot (tsoo FOOS).

der Zug

The train (dehr TSOOK).

behüten

To guard, protect (buh-HÜ-ten).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

gehen

GAY-en

verb

to go, walk

fahren

FAH-ren

verb (a → ä)

to go (by vehicle), drive

nehmen

NAY-men

verb (e → i)

to take

das Auto

dahs OW-toh

das · noun

car

der Bus

dehr BOOS

der · noun

bus

der Zug

dehr TSOOK

der · noun

train

das Fahrrad

dahs FAHR-raht

das · noun

bicycle

nach Hause / zu Hause

nahkh HOW-zuh / tsoo HOW-zuh

phrases

home (direction) / at home

zu Fuß

tsoo FOOS

phrase

on foot

das Flugzeug

dahs FLOOK-tsoyk

das · noun

airplane

CORE IDEAS

The story. Psalm 121 is a song of pilgrims walking up to Jerusalem for the feasts, through dangerous hills. They lift their eyes and ask: Whence cometh my help? And they answer: My help cometh from the LORD, which made heaven and earth. He will not let thy foot be moved; He that keepeth thee will not slumber. The psalm ends: **der HERR behüte deinen Ausgang und Eingang von nun an bis in Ewigkeit** (the LORD shall preserve thy going out and thy coming in from this time forth). Many German families have prayed it over children leaving home, and travelers have carried it on every road.

How German works: gehen and fahren. gehen (on foot) is regular: ich gehe, du gehst, er geht… **fahren** (by vehicle, or to drive) changes a to ä in du and er: **ich fahre, du fährst, er/sie fährt, wir fahren, ihr fahrt, sie fahren**. Also **nehmen** (to take) changes e to i: **ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt**. **Ich gehe zu Fuß. Wir fahren mit dem Auto. Er nimmt den Bus.**

How German works: transport. With **mit**, the article changes (you will learn why in Unit 9; for now learn the phrases): **mit dem Auto, mit dem Bus, mit dem Zug, mit dem Fahrrad** (bike), **mit dem Flugzeug** (plane), **mit dem Schiff**, **mit der Straßenbahn** (streetcar), **mit der U-Bahn** (subway). On foot: **zu Fuß**.

How German works: where to? Wohin gehst du? (where to?) For cities and countries: **nach**: nach Berlin, nach Österreich. Home: **nach Hause** (but at home: zu Hause). For people and many places: **zu**: zu Oma, **zum** Bahnhof, **zum** Arzt, **zur** Schule, **zur** Post (zum for der/das, zur for die). Into buildings: **in die Kirche, ins Kino, in die Stadt**. **Sonntags fahren wir mit dem Auto in die Kirche.**

ACTIVITY

Family travel survey

Ask each family member how and where they travel during the week and make a chart.

You will need

- Paper and pencils

Steps

1. Ask each person (in German if possible): Wohin fährst du? Wie fährst du?
2. Make a chart with names, places and transport.
3. Write a sentence for each: Papa fährt mit dem Auto zur Arbeit. Ich gehe zu Fuß zum Park.
4. Present the chart and say who travels most.

Tips

- Add a dream trip: Ich fahre mit dem Zug nach Wien.
- Copy Psalm 121:8 at the top as a travel blessing.

Check your work

☐ My chart has at least six correct sentences with gehen and fahren.

☐ I used nach, zu and in correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the gehen, fahren and nehmen charts.
2. Copy the transport phrases with mit.
3. Write a table of nach, zu and in with three examples each.
4. Copy Psalm 121:8 in German and English.

> **From history.** Germany built one of the world's first highway networks, the Autobahn, beginning in the 1930s; its railways, the Deutsche Bahn, carry millions of passengers every day.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can pray Psalm 121:8 in German over any family member leaving on a trip this week.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: You (du) drive to Munich.

▼ **Show solution**

1. fahren: du fährst; city: nach.

Answer: Du fährst nach München.

Example 2. Say: She takes the train.

▼ **Show solution**

1. nehmen: sie nimmt; der Zug → den Zug.

Answer: Sie nimmt den Zug.

Example 3. Say: I am going home on foot.

▼ **Show solution**

1. zu Fuß; home (direction): nach Hause.

Answer: Ich gehe zu Fuß nach Hause.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is the er form of fahren?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   fährt.

2. Easy What is der Zug?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The train.

3. Easy How do you say on foot?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   zu Fuß.

4. Medium Say: We go by bus to school.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wir fahren mit dem Bus zur Schule.

5. Medium Fill in: Er fährt ___ Hamburg. Ich gehe ___ Arzt.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   nach; zum.

6. Medium nach Hause or zu Hause: I am at home.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich bin zu Hause.

7. Hard Say: On Sunday my family drives to church.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Am Sonntag fährt meine Familie in die Kirche.

8. Hard Translate Psalm 121:8 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The LORD shall preserve thy going out and thy coming in from this time forth, and even for evermore.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Using gehen for travel by car. In a vehicle, use fahren: Wir fahren nach Chicago.
- Saying du fahrst. Fahren changes its vowel: du fährst.
- Saying zu Berlin. With cities and countries, use nach.

> **Make it a game · Wohin fährst du?.** Make cards with places (Berlin, Oma, die Schule, die Kirche, der Bahnhof) and transport pictures. Draw one of each and make a sentence: Ich fahre mit dem Fahrrad zur Schule. Correct nach/zu/in scores a point.

> **Scripture.** “The LORD shall preserve thy going out and thy coming in from this time forth, and even for evermore.” (Psalm 121:8, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *der HERR behüte deinen Ausgang und Eingang von nun an bis in Ewigkeit.* The pilgrims’ psalm ends with God’s promise to guard our going out and coming in, on every journey.

UNIT 6 · IN DER STADT: GEHEN, FAHREN, WEGE · LESSON 6.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

6.3 Wie komme ich zum…? Directions and the Imperative

OBJECTIVES

- Ask for directions politely.
- Give directions with links, rechts, geradeaus, die erste / zweite Straße.
- Form the imperative for Sie and du.
- Read John 14:6 in German.

> **Warm-up.** Have you ever been lost? How did you find your way? Today you learn to ask a stranger the way in German, to understand the answer, and to give directions yourself.

WATCH

How to Give Simple Directions in German

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 6:08

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fzZs6PrFlns

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on directions.

Note: GermanPod101 on giving simple directions in German, about six minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

learn how to ask for and follow directions in German | Daily German Conversations #03

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 3:27

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gUigRHZsTl0

Session 2 or 3: asking for and following directions in a dialogue.

KEY TERMS

der Weg
The way, path (dehr VAYK).

geradeaus
Straight ahead (guh-RAH-duh-OWS).

die Wahrheit
The truth (dee VAHR-hite).

links / rechts
Left / right (LINKS / REKHTS).

der Imperativ
The imperative (command form) (dehr IM-peh-rah-teef).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

der Weg
dehr VAYK
der · noun
way, path

links
LINKS
adverb
left

rechts
REKHTS
adverb
right

geradeaus
guh-RAH-duh-OWS
adverb
straight ahead

die Ampel
dee AHM-pel
die · noun
traffic light

die Kreuzung
dee KROY-tsoong
die · noun
intersection

weit / nah
VITE / NAH
adjectives
far / near

die Wahrheit
dee VAHR-hite
die · noun
truth

die Brücke
dee BRÜK-kuh
die · noun
bridge

der Imperativ
dehr im-peh-rah-TEEF
der · noun
imperative

CORE IDEAS

The story. On the night before He died, Jesus told His disciples that He was going to prepare a place for them in His Father's house, and that they knew the way. Thomas objected: Lord, we know not whither thou goest; and how can we know the way? Jesus answered: **Ich bin der Weg und die Wahrheit und das Leben; niemand kommt zum Vater denn durch mich** (I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me). Directions on a map get you to a building; this answer is the way home to God.

How German works: asking the way. Entschuldigung, wie komme ich zum Bahnhof? / zur Kirche? (how do I get to…?) **Wo ist hier die Post? Ist es weit?** (is it far?) **— Nein, es ist nicht weit. Es ist ganz nah** (very close). Always thank: **Vielen Dank! — Bitte schön!**

How German works: directions. Gehen Sie geradeaus (straight ahead). **Gehen Sie links / rechts** (or **Biegen Sie links ab**: turn left). **Nehmen Sie die erste / zweite / dritte Straße rechts. bis zur Ampel** (as far as the traffic light), **bis zur Kreuzung** (intersection), **über die Brücke** (over the bridge). **Die Kirche ist auf der linken Seite** (on the left side).

How German works: the imperative. For **Sie**: verb first, then Sie: **Gehen Sie! Nehmen Sie den Bus! Kommen Sie!** For **du**: the du form without -st and without du: **Geh! Komm! Mach!**; verbs that change e to i keep the change: **Nimm den Bus! Iss! Sprich!**, but a → ä verbs do not: **Fahr!** For **ihr**: the ihr form without ihr: **Geht! Kommt!** And sein: **Sei ruhig! Seien Sie so nett!** Add **bitte** to be polite: **Komm bitte!**

ACTIVITY

Treasure hunt with German directions

Hide a small treasure and write German directions to find it.

You will need

- A small treasure (a sweet or a note)
- Paper

Steps

1. Hide the treasure somewhere in the house or yard.
2. Write directions in German with the du imperative: Geh zur Tür. Geh links. Geh fünf Schritte geradeaus. Nimm das Buch auf dem Tisch!
3. Give the directions to a family member and watch them follow.
4. Then follow someone else's directions written with Sie.

Tips

- Write directions from your house to your church in German.
- Draw a map that matches your directions.

Check your work

☐ My directions have at least eight steps with correct imperatives.

☐ The treasure was found!

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the direction phrases.
2. Copy the imperative chart for du, ihr and Sie with gehen, kommen, nehmen, fahren and sein.
3. Write directions from your house to a nearby place.
4. Copy John 14:6 in German and English.

> **From history.** Martin Luther walked to Rome and back in 1510–1511 on business for his monastic order, more than a thousand kilometers each way across the Alps, and he was troubled by the worldliness he saw there.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can give the student German directions on the next drive or walk and let the student navigate.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Ask politely how to get to the church.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Entschuldigung; wie komme ich + zu der → zur.

Answer: Entschuldigung, wie komme ich zur Kirche?

Example 2. Tell a stranger: Take the second street on the left.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Sie imperative: Nehmen Sie.

Answer: Nehmen Sie die zweite Straße links.

Example 3. Tell a friend: Take the bus!

▼ **Show solution**

1. nehmen → du nimmst → Nimm!

Answer: Nimm den Bus!

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is geradeaus?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Straight ahead.

2. Easy What is links?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Left.

3. Easy Ask: Is it far?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ist es weit?

4. Medium Make Sie imperatives: kommen, gehen.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Kommen Sie! Gehen Sie!

5. Medium Make du imperatives: kommen, essen, fahren.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Komm! Iss! Fahr!

6. Medium Say: Go (Sie) as far as the traffic light.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Gehen Sie bis zur Ampel.

7. Hard Give directions in three steps to the train station.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Gehen Sie geradeaus bis zur Kreuzung. Dann gehen Sie rechts. Der Bahnhof ist auf der linken Seite.

8. Hard Translate John 14:6 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Keeping du in the imperative: Geh du links. Say Geh links!
- Changing a to ä in the du imperative: Fähr! Say Fahr!
- Leaving out Sie in the polite imperative: Gehen geradeaus. Say Gehen Sie geradeaus.

> **Make it a game · Roboter.** One player is a robot who only obeys German commands: Geh geradeaus! Geh links! Stopp! Setz dich! Steh auf! The commander guides the robot to a goal across the room. Switch roles; the fastest arrival wins.

> **Scripture.** “Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.” (John 14:6, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Ich bin der Weg und die Wahrheit und das Leben; niemand kommt zum Vater denn durch mich.* When Thomas asked the way, Jesus answered that He Himself is the Way, the Truth and the Life.

UNIT 7

Körper und Kleidung: tragen und dieser

Lesson 7.1 names the parts of the body with their plurals (der Kopf, die Hand, die Hände), says what hurts (Ich habe Kopfschmerzen; Mein Bein tut weh), and practices a visit to the doctor, with 1 Corinthians 12:12.

Lesson 7.2 names clothes and colors, conjugates tragen (to wear) and the separable anziehen, and studies Holbein’s Edward VI as a Child, with Matthew 6:29. Lesson 7.3 teaches dieser and welcher (which take the same endings as der, die, das), asks Wie gefällt dir dieser Pullover?, and shops for clothes, with 1 Samuel 16:7.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–6.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name twenty parts of the body with plurals.
- ☐ I can say what hurts and talk to a doctor.
- ☐ I can name twenty clothes and ten colors and use tragen.
- ☐ I can use dieser and welcher in all three genders and in the accusative.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

7.1	**Der Körper: Body and Health**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
7.2	**Die Kleidung: Clothes, Colors and tragen**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
7.3	**Dieser oder jener? Choosing and Buying**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 7 test

Unit 7 test. Questions 1–2 are oral. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Point to and name eight parts of your body with der, die or das.
2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Describe what you are wearing today, with colors.
3. **5 pts**
   Write the plural: der Arm, die Hand, das Auge, der Fuß, das Ohr.
4. **5 pts**
   Write: I have a headache. My foot hurts. My teeth hurt.
5. **5 pts**
   Conjugate tragen for ich, du, er, wir.

6. **5 pts**

   Write: In winter I put on a coat. She puts on her shoes.

7. **5 pts**

   Fill in dieser: ___ Hemd ist schön. ___ Jacke ist teuer. Ich kaufe ___ Pullover.

8. **5 pts**

   Ask which: ___ Hose? ___ Mantel (accusative)? ___ Schuhe?

9. **5 pts**

   Write 1 Samuel 16:7b (ein Mensch sieht … an) in German and translate.

10. **5 pts**

    Describe Holbein's little Edward in three German sentences.

ANSWER KEY

1. For example: der Kopf, die Nase, der Mund, das Auge, das Ohr, die Hand, der Arm, das Bein.
2. For example: Ich trage eine blaue Hose, ein weißes Hemd und schwarze Schuhe.
3. die Arme, die Hände, die Augen, die Füße, die Ohren.
4. Ich habe Kopfschmerzen. Mein Fuß tut weh. Meine Zähne tun weh.
5. ich trage, du trägst, er trägt, wir tragen.
6. Im Winter ziehe ich einen Mantel an. Sie zieht ihre Schuhe an.
7. Dieses, Diese, diesen.
8. Welche Hose? Welchen Mantel? Welche Schuhe?
9. ein Mensch sieht, was vor Augen ist; der HERR aber sieht das Herz an. Man looketh on the outward appearance, but the LORD looketh on the heart.
10. For example: Das Kind trägt einen roten Hut mit einer weißen Feder. Seine Kleidung ist rot und gold. Er hebt die Hand.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: MODENSCHAU (A FASHION SHOW) AND A VISIT TO THE DOCTOR

Present two short scenes in German. First, a family fashion show: describe four outfits with clothes, colors and tragen as each person walks in (Anna trägt ein grünes Kleid und eine weiße Jacke). Second, a doctor's visit role-play: greet the doctor, say what hurts, answer two questions, and receive advice in the imperative (Trinken Sie viel Wasser!). Write both scripts first.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Clothing	At least twelve clothing words with correct articles.
Colors and endings	Colors used correctly.
Body and health	Correct body words and weh tun / Schmerzen.
Delivery	Both scenes presented clearly.

UNIT 7 · KÖRPER UND KLEIDUNG: TRAGEN UND DIESER · LESSON 7.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

7.1 Der Körper: Body and Health

OBJECTIVES

- Name twenty parts of the body with articles and plurals.
- Say what hurts: Ich habe Kopfschmerzen; Mein Bein tut weh.
- Talk to a doctor and understand simple advice.
- Read 1 Corinthians 12:12 in German.

> **Warm-up.** Touch your head, your shoulders, your knees and your toes. Every part of your body has a job, and none can say to another, I have no need of thee. Today you learn the body in German, and how to tell a doctor what is wrong.

WATCH

Learn German - Body Parts Vocabulary

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 2:42

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Y0WfqmrOnBU

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph. Point to each part as it is named.

Note: GermanPod101 on body parts vocabulary, under three minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Sommerprogramm #20 - Bist du krank? - How to Respond?! - A2-B1

lingoni GERMAN · 6:33

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gEdjSM3PHXM

Session 2 or 3: conversations about being sick.

KEY TERMS

der Körper
The body (dehr KÖR-per).

der Leib
The body (older, used in the Bible) (dehr LIPE).

die Schmerzen
Pain, aches (dee SHMAIR-tsen).

weh tun
To hurt (VAY toon).

der Arzt / die Ärztin
The doctor (dehr ARTST / dee AIRTS-tin).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

der Kopf
dehr KOPF
der · noun
head

das Auge
dahs OW-guh
das · noun
eye

das Ohr
dahs OHR
das · noun
ear

der Mund
dehr MOONT
der · noun
mouth

die Hand / die Hände
HAHNT / HEN-duh
die · noun
hand / hands

das Bein
dahs BINE
das · noun
leg

der Fuß / die Füße
FOOS / FÜ-suh
der · noun
foot / feet

weh tun
VAY toon
verb phrase
to hurt

der Körper
dehr KÖR-per
der · noun
body

der Arzt / die Ärztin
dehr ARTST / dee AIRTS-tin
der / die · noun
doctor

CORE IDEAS

The story. The church in Corinth was divided: some boasted of their gifts and looked down on others. Paul answered with a picture: **Denn gleichwie ein Leib ist, und hat doch viele Glieder** (for as the body is one, and hath many members) … so also is Christ. The eye cannot say to the hand, I have no need of thee. The foot is not less a part of the body because it is not a hand. If one member suffers, all suffer; if one is honored, all rejoice. Every Christian, gifted or weak, belongs to the one body of Christ.

How German works: the body. der Kopf (head), **das Haar / die Haare, das Gesicht** (face), **das Auge / die Augen, das Ohr / die Ohren, die Nase, der Mund, der Zahn / die Zähne, der Hals** (neck, throat), **die Schulter, der Arm, die Hand / die Hände, der Finger, der Rücken** (back), **der Bauch** (stomach), **das Bein** (leg), **das Knie, der Fuß / die Füße, das Herz** (heart).

How German works: what hurts. Two ways: add **-schmerzen** to the body part with haben: **Ich habe Kopfschmerzen, Bauchschmerzen, Halsschmerzen, Zahnschmerzen.** Or use **weh tun**: **Mein Kopf tut weh. Meine Füße tun weh.** Ask: **Was tut dir weh? Was fehlt Ihnen?** (what is wrong?) **Ich bin krank. Ich bin erkältet** (I have a cold). **Ich habe Fieber.**

How German works: at the doctor's. Guten Tag, Frau Doktor. — Guten Tag. Was fehlt Ihnen? — Ich habe Halsschmerzen und Fieber. — Seit wann? (since when?) **— Seit zwei Tagen. — Machen Sie den Mund auf. Trinken Sie viel Tee und bleiben Sie im Bett. Gute Besserung!** (get well soon!). Germans go to the **Apotheke** (pharmacy) for medicine.

ACTIVITY

Body poster and doctor's visit

Make a labeled body poster and act out a visit to the doctor.

You will need

- A large sheet of paper (or trace a family member's outline on wrapping paper)
- Markers

Steps

1. Draw or trace a body and label twenty parts with their articles; write plurals where useful.
2. Act out a doctor's visit with a parent as the doctor: say what hurts, answer Seit wann?, and listen to advice.
3. Switch roles: you are the doctor and give two pieces of advice with the Sie imperative.
4. Write the dialogue in your notebook.

Tips

- Add a 1 Corinthians 12 label: label the poster Ein Leib, viele Glieder.
- Sing Kopf und Schultern, Knie und Fuß with a younger sibling.

Check your work

☐ My poster has twenty correct labels.

☐ My dialogue uses Schmerzen or weh tun correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy twenty body parts with articles and plurals.
2. Copy the phrases for pain and illness.
3. Write a six-line doctor's dialogue.
4. Copy 1 Corinthians 12:12 (to viele Glieder) in German and English.

> **From history.** German scientists and doctors gave the world aspirin (Bayer, 1899), the X-ray (Wilhelm Röntgen, 1895) and the discovery of the tuberculosis germ (Robert Koch, 1882).

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can read 1 Corinthians 12 aloud in the Luther Bible and name every body part Paul mentions.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: I have a stomachache.

▼ **Show solution**

1. der Bauch + Schmerzen.

Answer: Ich habe Bauchschmerzen.

Example 2. Say: My eyes hurt.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Plural subject: tun weh.

Answer: Meine Augen tun weh.

Example 3. Wish someone a quick recovery.

▼ **Show solution**

1. A fixed phrase.

Answer: Gute Besserung!

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is der Kopf?

▼ **Show answer**

The head.

2. Easy Plural of der Fuß?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   die Füße.

3. Easy What is das Herz?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The heart.

4. Medium Say: I have a sore throat.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich habe Halsschmerzen.

5. Medium Say: My leg hurts.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Mein Bein tut weh.

6. Medium Ask a friend what hurts.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Was tut dir weh?

7. Hard Give a sick friend two pieces of advice with the du imperative.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Trink viel Tee! Bleib im Bett!

8. Hard Translate 1 Corinthians 12:12a from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   For as the body is one, and hath many members.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Mein Kopf tut mir Schmerzen. Use Ich habe Kopfschmerzen or Mein Kopf tut weh.
- Using tut with plural parts: Meine Füße tut weh. Say Meine Füße tun weh.
- Forgetting umlauts in plurals: die Hande. Say die Hände.

Make it a game · Simon sagt (Simon says). The leader gives commands: Simon sagt: Berühr die Nase! Simon sagt: Heb die Hand! Zeig den Fuß! A player who moves without hearing Simon sagt, or touches the wrong part, is out.

Scripture. "For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also is Christ." (1 Corinthians 12:12, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *Denn gleichwie ein Leib ist, und hat doch viele Glieder* Paul compares the church to a body with many members, all needed. Luther used der Leib, the old word for body, and die Glieder for the members.

UNIT 7 · KÖRPER UND KLEIDUNG: TRAGEN UND DIESER · LESSON 7.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

7.2 Die Kleidung: Clothes, Colors and tragen

OBJECTIVES

- Name twenty clothes and ten colors.
- Conjugate tragen (a → ä) and the separable verb anziehen.
- Describe what someone is wearing.
- Describe Holbein's Edward VI as a Child.

Warm-up. What are you wearing today? What do you wear to church? In the snow? Today you learn clothes in German, and look at one of the most splendid baby clothes ever painted.

WATCH

Weekly German Words with Alisa – Clothes

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 2:04

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bsZ65naiyps

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on clothes.

Note: GermanPod101's Weekly German Words on clothes, about two minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Let's take a quiz about clothes and separable verbs in German! - A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 6:24

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=TgIvOYmm7sY

Session 2 or 3: a quiz on clothes and separable verbs like anziehen.

KEY TERMS

die Kleidung
Clothing (dee KLY-doong).

anziehen
To put on (clothes) (AHN-tsee-en).

die Herrlichkeit
Glory, splendor (dee HAIR-likh-kite).

tragen
To wear; to carry (TRAH-gen).

die Farbe
The color (dee FAR-buh).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

die Kleidung
dee KLY-doong
die · noun
clothing

die Hose
dee HOH-zuh
die · noun
trousers, pants

das Hemd
dahs HEMT
das · noun
shirt

der Pullover
dehr poo-LOH-ver
der · noun
sweater

die Jacke
dee YAHK-kuh
die · noun
jacket

das Kleid
dahs KLITE
das · noun
dress

der Schuh
dehr SHOO
der · noun
shoe

tragen
TRAH-gen
verb (a → ä)
to wear; carry

anziehen
AHN-tsee-en
separable verb
to put on

die Farbe
dee FAR-buh
die · noun
color

CORE IDEAS

The story. On New Year's Day 1539, King Henry VIII of England received a gift from the German painter Hans Holbein, who had moved from Basel to London: a portrait of his only son, Prince Edward, about fourteen months old. The baby prince wears a red velvet hat with a white ostrich feather and a gold-embroidered cap beneath it, and a red and gold gown with white cuffs. He raises his right hand as if giving a blessing and holds a golden rattle like a scepter. Below, a Latin poem urges him to equal his great father. Edward became king at nine and died at fifteen, a young king remembered for his Protestant faith. Splendid clothes! Yet Jesus said of the lilies of

the field: **daß auch Salomo in aller seiner Herrlichkeit nicht bekleidet gewesen ist als derselben eins** (even Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these).

How German works: clothes. die Hose (trousers, singular!), **die Jeans, das Hemd** (shirt), **die Bluse, das T-Shirt, der Pullover (Pulli), die Jacke, der Mantel** (coat), **das Kleid** (dress), **der Rock** (skirt), **der Anzug** (suit), **die Krawatte** (tie), **der Schuh / die Schuhe, der Stiefel** (boot), **die Socke, der Hut** (hat), **die Mütze** (cap), **der Schal** (scarf), **die Handschuhe** (gloves: hand-shoes!).

How German works: colors. rot, blau, gelb, grün, schwarz, weiß, grau, braun, orange, rosa, lila, and **hell-** / **dunkel-** (light / dark): hellblau, dunkelgrün. After sein, no ending: **Das Hemd ist weiß.** Before a noun, colors take endings like other adjectives; for now learn these patterns: **ein roter Hut, eine rote Jacke, ein rotes Kleid, rote Schuhe**; after haben or tragen (accusative): **einen roten Hut.**

How German works: tragen and anziehen. tragen changes a to ä: **ich trage, du trägst, er trägt, wir tragen, ihr tragt, sie tragen. Edward trägt einen roten Hut. anziehen** (to put on) is separable: the prefix an goes to the end: **Ich ziehe meine Jacke an. Zieh deinen Mantel an!**

PICTURE STUDY



Edward VI as a Child, Hans Holbein the Younger, probably 1538 · Oil on panel · National Gallery of Art, Washington

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Holbein painted the young prince as a little king: the pose, the raised hand and the rattle held like a scepter all speak of royal dignity. The rich reds and golds of his clothes glow against the plain gray-green background. The Latin verses, by the scholar Richard Morison, tell the boy to be his father's heir in virtue as well as in the throne.

Look closely

- What is Edward wearing on his head? What colors?
- Find the white feather and the gold rattle.
- What is he doing with his right hand?
- What is written below him, and in what language?

Talk about it

1. Describe Edward's clothes in German with tragen.
2. Why might the king want his baby painted like a grown-up ruler?

ACTIVITY

Wardrobe labels and what to wear

Label clothes in your closet and plan outfits for different days in German.

You will need

- Sticky notes in three colors
- Paper

Steps

1. Label fifteen pieces of clothing in your closet with der, die or das.
2. Write what you wear for four occasions: Zur Kirche trage ich… Im Winter trage ich… Beim Sport trage ich… Zu Hause trage ich…
3. Include a color for each item.
4. Describe each family member's clothes at dinner tonight in German.

Tips

- Draw Holbein's Edward and label every piece of clothing in German.
- Write a weather-clothes rule: Wenn es regnet, ziehe ich… an (a preview of Unit 8).

Check your work

☐ I labeled fifteen clothes correctly.

☐ I used tragen and anziehen correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy twenty clothes with articles in three columns.
2. Copy the colors.
3. Copy the tragen chart and three sentences with anziehen.
4. Copy Matthew 6:29 in German and English.

> **From history.** Holbein also painted Henry VIII himself, Edward's mother Jane Seymour, and the great Protestant statesman Thomas Cromwell; many English faces of the Reformation are known to us through this German painter.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can lay out tomorrow's clothes each evening and name them in German.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: He wears a black coat.

▼ **Show solution**

1. tragen: er trägt; der Mantel → einen schwarzen Mantel.

Answer: Er trägt einen schwarzen Mantel.

Example 2. Say: Put on your shoes! (to a child)

▼ **Show solution**

1. du imperative: zieh … an.

Answer: Zieh deine Schuhe an!

Example 3. Say: The dress is blue.

▼ **Show solution**

1. After sein: no ending.

Answer: Das Kleid ist blau.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is die Hose?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Trousers, pants.

2. Easy What is das Hemd?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The shirt.

3. Easy What color is gelb?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Yellow.

4. Medium Conjugate tragen for du and er.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   du trägst, er trägt.

5. Medium Say: I am putting on my jacket.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich ziehe meine Jacke an.

6. Medium What are Handschuhe, literally?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Hand-shoes: gloves.

7. Hard Describe what you wear to church in two sentences.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Zur Kirche trage ich ein weißes Hemd und eine dunkle Hose. Ich trage auch schwarze Schuhe.

8. Hard Translate Matthew 6:29 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   I say unto you, that even Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying die Hosen for one pair. Die Hose is one pair of trousers.
- Saying du tragst. Tragen changes its vowel: du trägst.
- Keeping an next to the verb: Ich anziehe die Jacke. Say Ich ziehe die Jacke an.

> **Make it a game · Ich packe meinen Koffer.** I pack my suitcase: the first player says Ich packe meinen Koffer und nehme einen roten Pulli mit. The next repeats and adds: … einen roten Pulli und eine blaue Hose. Continue until someone forgets.

> **Scripture.** “And yet I say unto you, That even Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these.” (Matthew 6:29, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *daß auch Salomo in aller seiner Herrlichkeit nicht bekleidet gewesen ist als derselben eins.* Jesus teaches us not to worry about clothing: God clothes the lilies more beautifully than Solomon in all his glory.

UNIT 7 · KÖRPER UND KLEIDUNG: TRAGEN UND DIESER · LESSON 7.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

7.3 Dieser oder jener? Choosing and Buying

OBJECTIVES

- Use dieser, diese, dieses and welcher, welche, welches.
- Use them in the accusative: diesen Mantel, welchen Hut.
- Ask and give opinions: Wie gefällt dir…? Der Pulli gefällt mir.
- Read 1 Samuel 16:7 in German.

> **Warm-up.** In a clothing store you point and ask: How much is this one? Which do you like? Today you learn the words this and which, which follow the pattern of der, die and das.

WATCH

Learn German Demonstrative Pronouns: dieser, diese, dieses Explained! - A2

lingoni GERMAN · 6:52

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=h7OHXCWEhk8

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on dieser.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the demonstrative pronouns dieser, diese, dieses, about seven minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Deutsche Demonstrativpronomen - dieser - dieses - diese - A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 4:41

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Qz8B7QFAACg

Session 2 or 3: more practice with dieser, dieses, diese.

KEY TERMS

dieser / diese / dieses

This (DEE-zer / DEE-zuh / DEE-zes).

welcher / welche / welches

Which (VEL-kher / VEL-khuh / VEL-khes).

gefallen

To please (Das gefällt mir: I like it) (guh-FAHL-len).

teuer / billig

Expensive / cheap (TOY-er / BIL-likh).

die Größe

The size (dee GRÖ-suh).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

dieser

DEE-zer

determiner

this

welcher

VEL-kher

question word

which

gefallen

guh-FAHL-len

verb + dative

to please

teuer

TOY-er

adjective

expensive

billig

BIL-likh

adjective

cheap

die Größe

dee GRÖ-suh

die · noun

size

suchen

ZOO-khen

verb

to look for

das Herz

dahs HAIRTS

das · noun

heart

dieses Hemd

DEE-zes HEMT

phrase

this shirt

Wie gefällt dir ...?

vee guh-FELT deer

phrase

How do you like ...?

CORE IDEAS

The story. God sent the prophet Samuel to Bethlehem to anoint a new king from among the sons of Jesse. When the eldest, Eliab, came in, tall and handsome, Samuel thought: Surely this is the LORD's anointed. But God said: Look not on his countenance, or on the height of his stature … **ein Mensch sieht, was vor Augen ist; der HERR aber sieht das Herz an** (man looketh on the outward appearance, but the LORD looketh on the heart). Seven sons passed by, and God chose none of them. The youngest, David, was out keeping the sheep. He was the one.

How German works: dieser and welcher. These words take the same endings as der, die, das: **der → dieser, die → diese, das → dieses, die (plural) → diese**. In the accusative, only the masculine changes, as always: **den → diesen. Dieser Mantel ist teuer. Diese Jacke ist billig. Dieses Hemd ist schön. Ich nehme diesen Pulli.** Welcher works the same way: **Welcher Hut? Welche Farbe? Welches Kleid? Welchen Mantel kaufst du?**

How German works: gefallen. To say you like how something looks, German says it pleases you: **Der Pulli gefällt mir** (the sweater pleases me). **Die Schuhe gefallen mir nicht.** Ask: **Wie gefällt dir diese Jacke?** (how do you like this jacket?) **Wie gefällt Ihnen dieses Kleid?** Notice that the thing liked is the subject.

How German works: in the store. Kann ich Ihnen helfen? — Ja, ich suche einen Mantel. — Welche Größe haben Sie? — Größe M. — Wie gefällt Ihnen dieser Mantel? — Er gefällt mir gut. Was kostet er? — Neunundachtzig Euro. — Das ist zu teuer. Haben Sie etwas Billigeres? — Ich nehme ihn. (I will take it.) Remember: for a masculine thing, it is er (nominative) and ihn (accusative).

ACTIVITY

Clothing store role-play

Set up a clothing store at home and shop in German.

You will need

- Clothes from your closet with price tags in euros
- A mirror

Steps

1. Hang or lay out ten pieces of clothing with prices.
2. Play the shop assistant and the customer: greet, ask Welche Größe?, point with dieser, ask Wie gefällt Ihnen…?, and buy something.
3. Use er/sie/es and ihn correctly when talking about the clothes.
4. Write the best dialogue in your notebook.

Tips

- Compare two items: Dieser Pulli ist billig, aber diese Jacke ist schön.
- Write 1 Samuel 16:7 on a card and hang it by the mirror.

Check your work

☐ I used dieser and welcher in three genders.

☐ I used gefallen correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the chart of der / dieser / welcher in nominative and accusative.
2. Write six sentences with gefallen.
3. Write a six-line store dialogue.
4. Copy 1 Samuel 16:7b in German and English.

> **From history.** Two brothers in the small Bavarian town of Herzogenaurach, Adolf and Rudolf Dassler, made sports shoes together until they quarreled; in 1948–49 each founded his own company, and they became the sportswear giants Adidas and Puma.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can browse a German store's website together and describe the items in German.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: This shirt is too expensive.

▼ **Show solution**

1. das Hemd → dieses Hemd.

Answer: Dieses Hemd ist zu teuer.

Example 2. Ask a friend: Which coat are you buying?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Accusative masculine: welchen.

Answer: Welchen Mantel kaufst du?

Example 3. Say: I like these shoes.

▼ **Show solution**

1. The shoes please me: gefallen in the plural.

Answer: Diese Schuhe gefallen mir.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Which form of dieser goes with Jacke?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   diese.

2. Easy What is teuer?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Expensive.

3. Easy What does Das gefällt mir mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   I like that.

4. Medium Fill in: Ich nehme ___ Hut (this).

   ▼ **Show answer**

   diesen.

5. Medium Ask: Which dress do you like? (du)

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Welches Kleid gefällt dir?

6. Medium Say: I will take it. (der Pulli)

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich nehme ihn.

7. Hard Write a three-line store dialogue with dieser and gefallen.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wie gefällt Ihnen dieser Pullover? — Er gefällt mir gut. Was kostet er? — Vierzig Euro.

8. Hard Translate 1 Samuel 16:7b from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Man looketh on the outward appearance, but the LORD looketh on the heart.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Ich nehme dieser Pulli. Accusative masculine: diesen Pulli.
- Saying Ich gefalle den Pulli. The thing is the subject: Der Pulli gefällt mir.
- Using es for a masculine thing: Ich nehme es (der Mantel). Say Ich nehme ihn.

> **Make it a game · Welcher? Dieser!.** Lay out clothes from three family members. The parent asks Welcher Pulli gehört Papa? Welche Socken gehören dir? The student points and answers with dieser: Dieser Pulli gehört Papa! A wrong ending costs a point.

> **Scripture.** “But the LORD said unto Samuel, Look not on his countenance, or on the height of his stature; because I have refused him: for the Lord seeth not as man seeth; for man looketh on the outward appearance, but the LORD looketh on the heart.” (1 Samuel 16:7, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *ein Mensch sieht, was vor Augen ist; der HERR aber sieht das Herz an.* God chose David, the youngest shepherd, not his tall brother: man looks on the outside, but God on the heart. A good word for anyone shopping for clothes!

UNIT 8

Wetter, Jahreszeiten und gern

Lesson 8.1 describes the weather (Es regnet. Es ist kalt. Die Sonne scheint.), reads a forecast with temperatures in Celsius, and studies Friedrich’s Winter Landscape with Church, with Psalm 147:16.

Lesson 8.2 learns the seasons and months, ordinal numbers for dates (am ersten Mai, am dritten Oktober) and birthdays, with Genesis 8:22. Lesson 8.3 says what you like to do with gern, lieber and am liebsten, and talks about hobbies, with Psalm 1:2.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–7.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can describe the weather and read a simple forecast.
- ☐ I can name the seasons and months and say a date.
- ☐ I can say what I like, prefer and like best to do with gern, lieber and am liebsten.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

8.1	**Das Wetter: Weather**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
8.2	**Jahreszeiten, Monate und Daten**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
8.3	**Gern, lieber, am liebsten: Hobbies**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 8 test

Unit 8 test. Questions 1–2 are oral. 50 points.

1. 5 pts
   Oral: Describe today’s weather in three sentences.
2. 5 pts
   Oral: Say your birthday and your favorite season, and why.
3. 5 pts
   Write: It is snowing. The sun is shining. It is 25 degrees.
4. 5 pts
   Write the four seasons with articles.
5. 5 pts
   Write the twelve months.

6. **5 pts**

   Write the dates in words: on May 1, on October 3, on December 25.

7. **5 pts**

   Write: I like to read. I prefer to swim. I like hiking best.

8. **5 pts**

   Write: In winter I wear a coat, because it is cold.

9. **5 pts**

   Write Genesis 8:22 (Solange … Winter) in German and translate.

10. **5 pts**

    Describe Friedrich's Winter Landscape with Church in three German sentences.

ANSWER KEY

1. For example: Heute ist es kalt. Es regnet. Es ist windig.
2. For example: Ich habe am zwölften März Geburtstag. Ich mag den Sommer am liebsten, denn es ist warm.
3. Es schneit. Die Sonne scheint. Es ist fünfundzwanzig Grad.
4. der Frühling, der Sommer, der Herbst, der Winter.
5. Januar, Februar, März, April, Mai, Juni, Juli, August, September, Oktober, November, Dezember.
6. am ersten Mai, am dritten Oktober, am fünfundzwanzigsten Dezember.
7. Ich lese gern. Ich schwimme lieber. Am liebsten wandere ich.
8. Im Winter trage ich einen Mantel, denn es ist kalt.
9. Solange die Erde steht, soll nicht aufhören Saat und Ernte, Frost und Hitze, Sommer und Winter. While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter … shall not cease.
10. For example: Es ist Winter und es schneit. Ein Mann sitzt vor einem Kreuz. Hinten steht eine Kirche im Nebel.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: WETTERBERICHT UND JAHRESKALENDER (WEATHER REPORT AND CALENDAR)

Prepare two pieces in German. First, present a one-minute TV weather report for four German cities (Berlin, Hamburg, München, Köln) with a map, temperatures in Celsius and the right clothes to wear. Second, make an illustrated family calendar with one page per season: the months, the family birthdays written in words (am vierten Juni), the church feasts, and what each person likes to do in that season with gern.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Weather	Correct weather expressions and temperatures.
Dates	Months and ordinal dates correct.
gern	gern, lieber, am liebsten used correctly.
Delivery	Report presented clearly; calendar neat.

UNIT 8 · WETTER, JAHRESZEITEN UND GERN · LESSON 8.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

8.1 Das Wetter: Weather

OBJECTIVES

- Describe the weather with es and with sein.
- Read temperatures in Celsius and a simple forecast.
- Describe Friedrich’s Winter Landscape with Church.
- Read Psalm 147:16 in German.

> **Warm-up.** Look out the window. Is it sunny, rainy, windy, snowy? Germans talk about the weather as much as anyone. Today you learn to describe it, and look at a winter painting by Germany’s greatest landscape painter.

WATCH

Talking About the Weather in German | Daily German Conversations #16

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 4:04

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SAd9RT7OjOQ

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph.

Note: GermanPod101 Daily German Conversations on talking about the weather, about four minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

German Listening Practice - Listening to a German Weather Forecast

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 3:09

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=-Wb-PIi5c8o

Session 2 or 3: listen to a German weather forecast.

KEY TERMS

das Wetter
The weather (dahs VET-ter).

der Regen
The rain (dehr RAY-gen).

der Grad
Degree (dehr GRAHT).

der Schnee
The snow (dehr SHNAY).

der Nebel
The fog, mist (dehr NAY-bel).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

das Wetter
dahs VET-ter
das · noun
weather

es regnet
es RAYG-net
verb phrase
it is raining

es schneit
es SHNITE
verb phrase
it is snowing

die Sonne
dee ZON-nuh
die · noun
sun

kalt
KAHLT
adjective
cold

warm
VARM
adjective
warm

windig
VIN-dikh
adjective
windy

der Grad
dehr GRAHT
der · noun
degree

der Schnee
dehr SHNAY
der · noun
snow

der Regen
dehr RAY-gen
der · noun
rain

CORE IDEAS

The story. Caspar David Friedrich, a devout Lutheran from Greifswald on the Baltic coast, painted in Dresden. In this small picture a man has made his way across the snow and sits leaning against a rock among young fir trees, before a crucifix. His crutches lie in the snow nearby: he no longer needs them. Out of the mist rises a great Gothic church, like a vision. The evergreen firs, green even in winter, were for Friedrich a sign of hope. The psalmist praises the God who rules the winter: **Er gibt Schnee wie Wolle, er streut Reif wie Asche** (He giveth snow like wool: he scattereth the hoarfrost like ashes).

How German works: weather verbs with es. Es regnet (it is raining), **Es schneit** (snowing), **Es donnert und blitzt** (thunder and lightning), **Es friert** (freezing). With sein: **Es ist kalt, warm, heiß, kühl, sonnig, windig, wolkig** (cloudy), **neblig** (foggy). With nouns: **Die Sonne scheint. Der Wind weht.** Ask: **Wie ist das Wetter heute?**

How German works: temperatures. Germany uses Celsius: **Es ist zwanzig Grad** (68 °F). **Es sind minus fünf Grad. Es ist null Grad** (freezing). A handy rule: double the Celsius and add thirty to estimate Fahrenheit. A forecast (**der Wetterbericht**): **Morgen regnet es im Norden. Im Süden scheint die Sonne, bei fünfundzwanzig Grad.**

How German works: weather and clothes. Combine Unit 7 and today: **Es regnet. Ich ziehe meinen Regenmantel an und nehme einen Regenschirm.** A German saying: **Es gibt kein schlechtes Wetter, nur schlechte Kleidung** (there is no bad weather, only bad clothing).

PICTURE STUDY



Winter Landscape with Church, Caspar David Friedrich, probably 1811 · Oil on canvas · The National Gallery, London

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Friedrich used winter, the season of death, to speak of resurrection. The crippled man has left his crutches behind and found rest at the cross; the green firs point upward like the church spires, and the church in the mist suggests the heavenly city still unseen. The colors are cool and quiet, so that the green trees stand out.

Look closely

- Find the man. What is he leaning against?
- Find the crutches. Why might he have left them?
- What stands among the fir trees?
- What appears in the mist behind?

Talk about it

1. Describe the weather in the painting in German.
2. Why might Friedrich have chosen evergreen trees and winter for a picture of faith?

ACTIVITY

Weather journal and forecast

Keep a German weather journal for a week and give a forecast.

You will need

- A notebook page with a seven-day chart
- An outdoor thermometer or a weather app set to Celsius

Steps

1. Each day for a week, write the date, the temperature in Celsius and two weather sentences: Montag: zwölf Grad. Es ist wolkig und windig.
2. Add what you wore: Ich trage eine Jacke.
3. At the end of the week, give a thirty-second forecast for tomorrow to your family, in German.
4. Draw weather symbols for each day.

Tips

- Look up the weather in Berlin and compare: In Berlin ist es kälter.
- Copy the saying Es gibt kein schlechtes Wetter, nur schlechte Kleidung on your chart.

Check your work

☐ I wrote seven days of weather in German.

☐ I gave a forecast with temperatures.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the weather expressions in three groups: es + verb, es ist + adjective, nouns.
2. Copy the Celsius rule and five temperatures.
3. Write a five-line forecast.
4. Copy Psalm 147:16 in German and English.

> **From history.** Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit, born in 1686 in the German-speaking city of Danzig (now Gdańsk, Poland), built the first reliable mercury thermometer and the Fahrenheit scale still used in America.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can make the morning weather report in German part of breakfast.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: It is raining and it is cold.

▼ **Show solution**

1. es regnet; es ist kalt.

Answer: Es regnet und es ist kalt.

Example 2. Say: It is thirty degrees.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Grad does not take a plural ending.

Answer: Es ist dreißig Grad.

Example 3. Ask about the weather.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Wie ist …?

Answer: Wie ist das Wetter heute?

PRACTICE

1. Easy What does Es schneit mean?

▼ **Show answer**

It is snowing.

2. Easy What is der Regen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The rain.

3. Easy What is windig?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Windy.

4. Medium Say: The sun is shining.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Die Sonne scheint.

5. Medium About how warm is 20 °C in Fahrenheit?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   About 68 °F (the estimate gives 70).

6. Medium Say: It is foggy.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Es ist neblig.

7. Hard Write a two-sentence forecast for tomorrow.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Morgen ist es sonnig und warm. Es sind dreiundzwanzig Grad.

8. Hard Translate Psalm 147:16 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   He giveth snow like wool: he scattereth the hoarfrost like ashes.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Es ist regnen. Say Es regnet.
- Saying Ich bin kalt for I am cold. Say Mir ist kalt (a fixed phrase).
- Saying zwanzig Grade. Grad stays the same: zwanzig Grad.

Make it a game · Wetterfrosch (weather frog). Germans call a weatherman a Wetterfrosch. The leader mimes weather (shivering, opening an umbrella, fanning himself); the first to call out the German sentence (Es ist kalt! Es regnet! Es ist heiß!) becomes the next Wetterfrosch.

Scripture. "He giveth snow like wool: he scattereth the hoarfrost like ashes." (Psalm 147:16, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *Er gibt Schnee wie Wolle, er streut Reif wie Asche.* The psalm praises God who sends snow and frost and then melts them with His word. Luther wrote Reif, the white frost on the grass in the morning.

UNIT 8 · WETTER, JAHRESZEITEN UND GERN · LESSON 8.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

8.2 Jahreszeiten, Monate und Daten

OBJECTIVES

- Name the seasons and the twelve months with im.
- Form ordinal numbers and say dates: am ersten Mai.
- Say and ask about birthdays.
- Read Genesis 8:22 in German.

Warm-up. When is your birthday? When is Christmas? In which season do the leaves fall? Today you learn the seasons, the months and how to say dates in German.

WATCH

Learn the Months in German - A1

lingoni GERMAN · 4:18

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=noKOXELXrOM

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on months.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the months in German, about four minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Listening Comprehension for Beginners #1 - der Winter - A1/A2

lingoni GERMAN · 3:51

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sc72fq-UzOk

Session 2 or 3: a listening exercise about winter.

KEY TERMS

die Jahreszeit
The season (dee YAH-res-tsite).

das Datum
The date (dahs DAH-toom).

die Ernte
The harvest (dee AIRN-tuh).

der Monat
The month (dehr MOH-naht).

der Geburtstag
The birthday (dehr guh-BOORTS-tahk).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

der Frühling
dehr FRÜ-ling
der · noun
spring

der Sommer
dehr ZOM-mer
der · noun
summer

der Herbst
dehr HAIRPST
der · noun
autumn

der Winter
dehr VIN-ter
der · noun
winter

der Monat
dehr MOH-naht
der · noun
month

der erste
dehr AIR-stuh
ordinal
the first

der dritte
dehr DRIT-tuh
ordinal
the third

der Geburtstag
dehr guh-BOORTS-tahk
der · noun
birthday

die Jahreszeit
dee YAH-res-tsite
die · noun
season

das Datum
dahs DAH-toom
das · noun
date

CORE IDEAS

The story. After the flood, Noah came out of the ark with his family and the animals, built an altar and offered a sacrifice to the LORD. God promised never again to destroy every living thing with a flood, and gave this promise: **Solange die Erde steht, soll nicht aufhören Saat und Ernte, Frost und Hitze, Sommer und Winter, Tag und Nacht** (While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease). Every change of season is a reminder that God keeps His word.

How German works: seasons and months. All are masculine: **der Frühling** (spring), **der Sommer, der Herbst** (autumn), **der Winter**. The months: **Januar, Februar, März, April, Mai, Juni, Juli, August, September, Oktober, November, Dezember**. Use **im** (in the): **im Winter, im Juli**. Germans often say **Juli** as **Julei** on the telephone, so it is not confused with Juni.

How German works: ordinal numbers and dates. Add **-te** to numbers 1–19 and **-ste** from 20: **der zweite, vierte, zehnte, zwanzigste, einunddreißigste**. Irregular: **der erste** (1st), **der dritte** (3rd), **der siebte** (7th). Today: **Heute ist der dritte Oktober.** On a date: **am** and -ten / -sten: **am ersten Mai, am fünfundzwanzigsten Dezember**. Written: **am 3. Oktober**, with a period, day before month: **3.10.**

How German works: birthdays. Wann hast du Geburtstag? — Ich habe am zwölften März Geburtstag. Wish: **Alles Gute zum Geburtstag!** or **Herzlichen Glückwunsch!** In German-speaking lands it is thought bad luck to congratulate someone before the day.

ACTIVITY

Family birthday calendar

Make a German calendar of family birthdays and feast days.

You will need

- Twelve sheets or a printed blank calendar
- Markers

Steps

1. Write the twelve months in German at the top of each page and the season it belongs to.
2. Write each family member’s birthday in words: Mama hat am vierten Juni Geburtstag.
3. Add the feasts: Weihnachten am fünfundzwanzigsten Dezember; der Tag der Deutschen Einheit am dritten Oktober; der Reformationstag am einunddreißigsten Oktober.
4. Draw a picture for each season.

Tips

- Copy Genesis 8:22 on the cover.
- Interview a grandparent: Wann hast du Geburtstag?

Check your work

☐ All months and seasons are correct.

☐ I wrote six dates in words correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the seasons and months.
2. Copy the ordinal numbers 1–31 with the irregular ones circled.
3. Write ten dates in words with am.
4. Copy Genesis 8:22 in German and English.

> **From history.** Charlemagne, according to his biographer Einhard, gave the months German names, such as Wintarmanoth (winter month) for January and Heilagmanoth (holy month) for December, but the Latin names won.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can sing Hoch soll er leben or Viel Glück und viel Segen at the next family birthday.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: My birthday is on July 7.

▼ **Show solution**

1. siebte is irregular; am siebten.

Answer: Ich habe am siebten Juli Geburtstag.

Example 2. Say: Today is the first of April.

▼ **Show solution**

1. der erste.

Answer: Heute ist der erste April.

Example 3. Say: In autumn it is windy.

▼ **Show solution**

1. im Herbst.

Answer: Im Herbst ist es windig.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is der Herbst?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Autumn, fall.

2. Easy Which month comes after Mai?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Juni.

3. Easy What is the 3rd?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   der dritte.

4. Medium Say: on December 24.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   am vierundzwanzigsten Dezember.

5. Medium Ask a friend when his birthday is.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wann hast du Geburtstag?

6. Medium How do Germans write October 3?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   3.10. or 3. Oktober.

7. Hard Say what you do in summer and in winter (two sentences).

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Im Sommer schwimme ich. Im Winter fahre ich Ski.

8. Hard Translate Genesis 8:22a from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter … shall not cease.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying in Winter. Use im: im Winter, im Mai.
- Saying am dreiten. The 3rd is irregular: am dritten.
- Writing dates month first: 10/3. Germans write the day first: 3.10.

Make it a game · Geburtstagsreihe (birthday line). Everyone must line up in order of birthday, but only by asking in German: Wann hast du Geburtstag? Am wievielten? Then each says his date aloud in order. With a small family, use the birthdays of cousins and grandparents written on cards.

Scripture. "While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease." (Genesis 8:22, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *Solange die Erde steht, soll nicht aufhören Saat und Ernte* After the flood God promised that the seasons would never cease while the earth remains: every spring and harvest is a sign of His faithfulness.

UNIT 8 · WETTER, JAHRESZEITEN UND GERN · LESSON 8.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

8.3 Gern, lieber, am liebsten: Hobbies

OBJECTIVES

- Say what you like to do with gern and nicht gern.
- Compare with lieber and am liebsten.
- Talk about hobbies and free time.
- Read Psalm 1:2 in German.

Warm-up. What do you like to do on a free afternoon? Read, play soccer, hike, draw? In German you add one small word to any verb to say you like doing it. Today you learn gern.

WATCH

How to say "I like to" in German - A2 [with Jacqueline]

lingoni GERMAN · 5:15

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jBQs6Hvj8A4

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on gern.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on how to say I like to with gern, about five minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Talking About Your Hobbies in German | Daily German Conversations #14

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 3:35

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eVzax3x__e8

Session 2 or 3: a conversation about hobbies.

KEY TERMS

gern
Gladly; with a verb: like to (GAIRN).

lieber
Rather, prefer to (LEE-ber).

am liebsten
Like best of all (ahm LEEP-sten).

das Hobby
The hobby (dahs HOB-bee).

die Lust
Delight, desire (dee LOOST).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

gern
GAIRN
adverb
gladly; like to

lieber
LEE-ber
adverb
rather; prefer to

am liebsten
ahm LEEP-sten
adverb
like best

mögen
MÖ-gen
verb
to like

lesen
LAY-zen
verb (e → ie)
to read

wandern
VAHN-dern
verb
to hike

malen
MAH-len
verb
to paint

die Freizeit
dee FRY-tsite
die · noun
free time

das Hobby
dahs HOB-bee
das · noun
hobby

zeichnen
TSIKH-nen
verb
to draw

CORE IDEAS

The story. The first psalm describes two ways of life. The blessed man does not walk in the counsel of the ungodly, **sondern hat Lust zum Gesetz des HERRN und redet von seinem Gesetz Tag und Nacht** (but his delight is in the law of the LORD; and in his law doth he meditate day and night). He is like a tree planted by the rivers of water, bringing forth fruit in its season. What we love to do shapes who we become; the psalmist loved God's word most of all.

How German works: gern. German has no simple verb for like to. Instead, add **gern** after the verb: **Ich lese gern** (I like to read). **Er spielt gern Fußball. Wir wandern**

gern. Not: **Ich schwimme nicht gern.** Ask: **Was machst du gern? Liest du gern?** For liking things (not activities), use **mögen**: **Ich mag Schokolade. Magst du Hunde?**

How German works: lieber and am liebsten. gern is irregular when comparing: **gern → lieber → am liebsten**. **Ich lese gern. Ich schwimme lieber. Am liebsten wandere ich** (most of all I like to hike). Notice the verb stays second, so the subject follows am liebsten. **Was machst du am liebsten?**

How German works: hobbies. lesen, schwimmen, wandern (hike), **Fußball spielen, Klavier spielen** (piano), **Gitarre spielen, malen** (paint), **zeichnen** (draw), **singen, kochen, backen, reiten** (ride horses), **Rad fahren** (cycle), **Ski fahren, fotografieren**. **In meiner Freizeit** (in my free time) **spiele ich gern Klavier.**

ACTIVITY

Family hobby survey

Survey your family about what they like to do and present the results in German.

You will need

- A chart with names down the side and hobbies across the top
- Colored pencils

Steps

1. Ask each family member about six activities: Liest du gern? Schwimmst du gern?
2. Mark gern, nicht gern or am liebsten in the chart.
3. Write one sentence for each person: Papa wandert gern, aber er schwimmt nicht gern. Am liebsten liest er.
4. Present the chart in German at dinner.

Tips

- Make a bar graph of the most popular activity.
- Add what each person likes to do in each season.

Check your work

☐ I asked six questions with gern.

☐ I used lieber and am liebsten correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the gern / lieber / am liebsten chart.
2. Copy twelve hobbies.
3. Write five sentences about yourself with gern, lieber and am liebsten.
4. Copy Psalm 1:2 in German and English.

> **From history.** Germany has more than 600,000 registered clubs (Vereine) for sports, music, hiking, gardening and much else; Germans joke that wherever three Germans meet, they found a Verein.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can tell each other at dinner what they liked best that day: Heute hat mir am besten gefallen …

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: I like to play piano.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Verb second, gern after the verb.

Answer: Ich spiele gern Klavier.

Example 2. Say: I prefer to read.

▼ **Show solution**

1. lieber.

Answer: Ich lese lieber.

Example 3. Say: Most of all I like to draw.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Am liebsten first; the verb comes second.

Answer: Am liebsten zeichne ich.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What does Ich wandere gern mean?

▼ **Show answer**

I like to hike.

2. Easy What is the comparative of gern?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   lieber.

3. Easy What is malen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   To paint.

4. Medium Say: She does not like to cook.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Sie kocht nicht gern.

5. Medium Ask a friend what he likes to do most.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Was machst du am liebsten?

6. Medium Say: I like dogs.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich mag Hunde.

7. Hard Write three sentences: something you like, prefer and like best.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich spiele gern Fußball. Ich schwimme lieber. Am liebsten reite ich.

8. Hard Translate Psalm 1:2 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   But his delight is in the law of the LORD; and in his law doth he meditate day and night.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Ich mag lesen for I like to read. Say Ich lese gern.
- Putting gern before the verb: Ich gern lese. Say Ich lese gern.
- Saying Am liebsten ich wandere. The verb stays second: Am liebsten wandere ich.

Make it a game · Was mache ich gern?. One player mimes a hobby. The others guess in German: Du schwimmst gern! Du spielst gern Gitarre! The right guesser mimes next. For a bonus point, the mime answers: Ja, aber am liebsten …

Scripture. "But his delight is in the law of the LORD; and in his law doth he meditate day and night." (Psalm 1:2, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *sondern hat Lust zum Gesetz des HERRN* The blessed man delights in God's law and meditates on it day and night. Luther's Lust here means joy and delight.

UNIT 9

Mein Tag, mein Haus: reflexive Verben, Dativ, Modalverben

Lesson 9.1 describes a day from waking to bedtime with reflexive verbs (sich waschen, sich anziehen) and separable verbs (aufstehen, einkaufen), and tells time of day, with Psalm 5:3.

Lesson 9.2 names the rooms and furniture of a house and explains the dative after in, auf, an and mit (im Wohnzimmer, auf dem Sofa, mit dem Bus), using Kersting's The Embroiderer, with John 14:2. Lesson 9.3 conjugates the six modal verbs and sends the second verb to the end, with Matthew 16:24.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–8.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can describe my day with reflexive and separable verbs.
- ☐ I can name the rooms of a house and say where things are with the dative.
- ☐ I can use six modal verbs with an infinitive at the end.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

9.1	**Mein Tag: Reflexive and Separable Verbs**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
9.2	**Das Haus: Rooms, Furniture and the Dative**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
9.3	**Modalverben: können, müssen, wollen ...**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 9 test

Unit 9 test. Questions 1–2 are oral. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Describe your morning in four sentences.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Describe your house: name four rooms and say what is in each.

3. **5 pts**
   Conjugate sich waschen for ich, du, er, wir.

4. **5 pts**
   Write: I get up at six. She goes shopping. We call our grandmother.

5. **5 pts**
   Fill in the dative: Das Buch liegt auf ___ Tisch. Die Katze schläft in ___ Küche. Ich fahre mit ___ Auto.

6. **5 pts**

   Write: The guitar is lying on the sofa. The picture hangs on the wall.

7. **5 pts**

   Conjugate können and müssen for ich, du, er.

8. **5 pts**

   Write: I can swim. You must help. May I go?

9. **5 pts**

   Write John 14:2a (In meines Vaters Hause …) in German and translate.

10. **5 pts**

    Describe Kersting's The Embroiderer in three German sentences with the dative.

ANSWER KEY

1. For example: Ich stehe um sieben Uhr auf. Ich wasche mich. Ich ziehe mich an. Dann frühstücke ich.
2. For example: Im Wohnzimmer steht ein Sofa. In der Küche steht ein Tisch.
3. ich wasche mich, du wäschst dich, er wäscht sich, wir waschen uns.
4. Ich stehe um sechs Uhr auf. Sie kauft ein. Wir rufen unsere Oma an.
5. dem, der, dem.
6. Die Gitarre liegt auf dem Sofa. Das Bild hängt an der Wand.
7. ich kann, du kannst, er kann; ich muss, du musst, er muss.
8. Ich kann schwimmen. Du musst helfen. Darf ich gehen?
9. In meines Vaters Hause sind viele Wohnungen. In my Father's house are many mansions.
10. For example: Die Frau sitzt am Fenster. Die Gitarre liegt auf dem Sofa. Das Bild hängt an der Wand.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: MEIN HAUS UND MEIN TAG (MY HOUSE AND MY DAY)

Make a labeled floor plan of your home in German with every room and at least fifteen pieces of furniture, and give a two-minute guided tour in German: Das ist die Küche. Der Kühlschrank steht neben dem Herd. Then present a short illustrated diary of one day (eight sentences from waking to bedtime) using reflexive verbs, separable verbs and at least three modal verbs (Am Sonntag muss ich früh aufstehen …).

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
House and furniture	Rooms and furniture with correct articles.
Dative	Correct dative after in, auf, an, neben.
Verbs	Reflexive, separable and modal verbs correct.
Delivery	Tour and diary presented clearly.

UNIT 9 · MEIN TAG, MEIN HAUS: REFLEXIVE VERBEN, DATIV, MODALVERBEN · LESSON 9.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

9.1 Mein Tag: Reflexive and Separable Verbs

OBJECTIVES

- Use reflexive verbs: ich wasche mich, du ziehst dich an.
- Use separable verbs: ich stehe auf, ich kaufe ein.
- Describe a day with times.
- Read Psalm 5:3 in German.

> **Warm-up.** What is the first thing you do in the morning? In German you do not just wash; you wash yourself. Today you learn to describe your whole day.

WATCH

Reflexive Verbs in German - Accusative Case - A2/B1

lingoni GERMAN · 6:20

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=idPMk0PQ1Kc

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on reflexive verbs. The video is pitched a little above this level; pause often.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on reflexive verbs in the accusative, about six minutes (A2/B1).

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn German Separable Verbs - ein - auf - aus - nach - mit - vorbei - zu - A1 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 9:55

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HAJe79cuXuA

Session 2 or 3, for separable verbs like aufstehen and einkaufen.

KEY TERMS

der Tagesablauf
The daily routine (dehr TAH-ges-ahp-lowf).

aufstehen
To get up (OWF-shtay-en).

frühe
Early (Luther's spelling; today früh) (FRÜ-uh).

sich waschen
To wash oneself (zikh VAH-shen).

frühstücken
To have breakfast (FRÜ-shtü-ken).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

sich waschen

zikh VAH-shen

reflexive verb (a → ä)

to wash oneself

sich anziehen

zikh AHN-tsee-en

reflexive, separable

to get dressed

sich freuen

zikh FROY-en

reflexive verb

to be glad

aufstehen

OWF-shtay-en

separable verb

to get up

aufwachen

OWF-vah-khen

separable verb

to wake up

einkaufen

INE-kow-fen

separable verb

to shop

anrufen

AHN-roo-fen

separable verb

to phone

frühstücken

FRÜ-shtü-ken

verb

to have breakfast

der Tagesablauf

dehr TAH-ges-ahp-lowf

der · noun

daily routine

sich beeilen

zikh buh-EYE-len

reflexive verb

to hurry

CORE IDEAS

The story. David began his day with God. In Psalm 5 he prays: **HERR, frühe wollest du meine Stimme hören; frühe will ich mich zu dir schicken und aufmerken** (My voice shalt thou hear in the morning, O LORD; in the morning will I direct my prayer unto thee, and will look up). Notice the German: **ich will mich zu dir schicken**, I will turn myself to Thee, uses a reflexive pronoun, and **aufmerken** (to pay attention) is a separable verb. A saying often attributed to Luther holds that the busier the day, the more it needs prayer.

How German works: reflexive verbs. Some actions are done to oneself. German uses a reflexive pronoun: **ich wasche mich, du wäschst dich, er/sie wäscht sich, wir waschen uns, ihr wascht euch, sie/Sie waschen sich.** Common ones: **sich waschen, sich anziehen** (get dressed), **sich kämmen** (comb one's hair), **sich beeilen** (hurry), **sich freuen** (be glad), **sich setzen** (sit down). Learn this one as a phrase: **Ich putze mir die Zähne** (I brush my teeth).

How German works: separable verbs. Many verbs have a prefix that jumps to the end in a statement: **aufstehen → Ich stehe um sechs Uhr auf. aufwachen** (wake up), **einkaufen** (shop), **anrufen** (phone), **fernsehen** (watch TV), **mitkommen** (come along), **anfangen** (begin). Both together: **Ich ziehe mich an.** The stress is always on the prefix: AUF-stehen.

How German works: a day. Ich wache um halb sieben auf. Ich stehe auf und wasche mich. Ich ziehe mich an und frühstücke. Um acht Uhr fange ich mit der Schule an. Nachmittags kaufe ich mit Mama ein. Abends sehe ich nicht fern; ich lese. Um neun Uhr gehe ich ins Bett. Time words: **morgens, vormittags, mittags, nachmittags, abends, nachts; zuerst, dann, danach.**

ACTIVITY

Mein Tagesablauf comic

Draw and caption your daily routine in German.

You will need

- A sheet divided into eight boxes
- Colored pencils
- A clock

Steps

1. Draw eight scenes from your day, waking to bedtime.
2. Write a caption with the time for each: Um sieben Uhr stehe ich auf.
3. Use at least three reflexive and three separable verbs.
4. Read the comic aloud to your family.

Tips

- Make a second comic for Sunday: Am Sonntag gehen wir in die Kirche.
- Interview a parent: Wann stehst du auf?

Check your work

☐ My comic uses three reflexive verbs correctly.

☐ The prefixes of my separable verbs are at the end.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the sich waschen chart.
2. Copy ten separable verbs with an example each.
3. Write your day in eight sentences.
4. Copy Psalm 5:3 in German and English.

> **From history.** Sunday rest is protected in Germany’s constitution, carried over from the Weimar constitution of 1919, and most shops stay closed on Sundays.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can begin the day with a short morning prayer in German, such as Psalm 5:3.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: I get dressed.

▼ **Show solution**

1. sich anziehen: reflexive and separable.

Answer: Ich ziehe mich an.

Example 2. Say: He gets up at seven.

▼ **Show solution**

1. aufstehen: auf goes to the end.

Answer: Er steht um sieben Uhr auf.

Example 3. Tell a friend: Hurry!

▼ **Show solution**

1. du imperative of sich beeilen.

Answer: Beeil dich!

PRACTICE

1. Easy What does Ich wasche mich mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   I wash myself.

2. Easy What is aufstehen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   To get up.

3. Easy Reflexive pronoun for wir?

▼ **Show answer**

uns.

4. Medium Say: She goes shopping.

▼ **Show answer**

Sie kauft ein.

5. Medium Say: You (du) are combing your hair.

▼ **Show answer**

Du kämmst dich.

6. Medium Say: I phone my grandmother.

▼ **Show answer**

Ich rufe meine Oma an.

7. Hard Write three sentences about your morning with zuerst, dann, danach.

▼ **Show answer**

Zuerst wache ich auf. Dann wasche ich mich. Danach ziehe ich mich an.

8. Hard Translate Psalm 5:3 from Luther.

▼ **Show answer**

My voice shalt thou hear in the morning, O LORD; in the morning will I direct my prayer unto thee, and will look up.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Leaving out the reflexive pronoun: Ich wasche. Say Ich wasche mich.
- Keeping the prefix with the verb: Ich aufstehe. Say Ich stehe auf.
- Using mich for er: Er wäscht mich. For himself, say Er wäscht sich.

> **Make it a game · Pantomime: Mein Morgen.** A player mimes a morning action; the others call it out in German in the du-form to the mime: Du wäschst dich! Du stehst auf! Du putzt dir die Zähne! The first correct sentence wins a point.

> **Scripture.** “My voice shalt thou hear in the morning, O LORD; in the morning will I direct my prayer unto thee, and will look up.” (Psalm 5:3, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *frühe will ich mich zu dir schicken und aufmerken.* David prays early in the morning and waits expectantly for God. Luther numbers this verse 5:4 because he counts the title as verse 1.

UNIT 9 · MEIN TAG, MEIN HAUS: REFLEXIVE VERBEN, DATIV, MODALVERBEN · LESSON 9.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

9.2 Das Haus: Rooms, Furniture and the Dative

OBJECTIVES

- Name the rooms of a house and fifteen pieces of furniture.
- Use the dative after in, auf, an, neben and mit to say where something is.
- Learn why we say mit dem Bus (promised in Unit 6).
- Describe Kersting’s The Embroiderer.

> **Warm-up.** Where is your Bible right now? On the table? In your room? Next to the bed? To answer Where? in German you need a new case, the dative. Today you learn it and look at one of the coziest rooms ever painted.

WATCH

Rooms in the House in German | Learn German Vocabulary with Examples | German for Beginners - A1

lingoni GERMAN · 5:31

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=LwK9KCqbSIU

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on rooms.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on rooms in the house with examples, about five and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

The Dative Case in German - Part 1: Definite Articles - A1 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 7:57

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yuYTleQIIxI

Session 2 or 3, for the dative articles dem, der, dem.

KEY TERMS

das Zimmer
The room (dahs TSIM-mer).

die Wohnung
The apartment; Luther: dwelling place (dee VOH-noong).

die Möbel
Furniture (plural) (dee MÖ-bel).

der Dativ
The dative case (dehr DAH-teef).

wo?
Where? (VOH).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

das Zimmer

dahs TSIM-mer

das · noun

room

die Küche

dee KÜ-khuh

die · noun

kitchen

das Wohnzimmer

dahs VOHN-tsim-mer

das · noun

living room

das Bett

dahs BET

das · noun

bed

der Stuhl

dehr SHTOOL

der · noun

chair

der Schrank

dehr SHRAHNK

der · noun

wardrobe, cupboard

die Wand

dee VAHNT

die · noun

wall

neben

NAY-ben

preposition

next to

die Wohnung

dee VOH-noong

die · noun

apartment; dwelling

die Möbel

dee MÖ-bel

die · plural noun

furniture

CORE IDEAS

The story. Georg Friedrich Kersting, a friend of Caspar David Friedrich, fought against Napoleon in 1813 and then painted quiet rooms in Dresden and Weimar. In The Embroiderer a young woman sits by an open window, bent over her work. Everything is in its place: the picture hangs on the wall, the guitar lies on the sofa, the plants stand on the windowsill. Peace after years of war. Jesus spoke of a home more lasting than any on earth: **In meines Vaters Hause sind viele Wohnungen** (In my Father's house are many mansions). I go to prepare a place for you.

How German works: the house. das Haus, die Wohnung (apartment), **das Zimmer: das Wohnzimmer** (living room), **das Schlafzimmer** (bedroom), **das Kinderzimmer, das Badezimmer** (bathroom), **die Küche** (kitchen), **das Esszimmer, der Flur** (hall), **der Keller** (cellar), **der Garten**. Furniture: **der Tisch, der Stuhl, das Sofa, das Bett, der Schrank** (wardrobe, cupboard), **das Regal** (shelf), **die Lampe, das Fenster, die Tür, die Wand** (wall), **der Herd** (stove), **der Kühlschrank** (refrigerator).

How German works: the dative of place. To say where something is, the words **in, auf** (on), **an** (on a wall, at), **neben** (next to), **unter, über, vor, hinter** take the dative. The articles change: **der → dem, das → dem, die → der**, plural **die → den** (+n). **Der Stuhl steht in der Küche. Das Buch liegt auf dem Tisch. Das Bild hängt an der Wand.** Short forms: **in dem → im, an dem → am: im Wohnzimmer, am Fenster**. Ask: **Wo ist ...?**

How German works: mit always takes the dative. In Unit 6 you learned mit dem Bus and mit der Bahn as fixed phrases. Now you know why: **mit** always takes the dative, whether there is movement or not: **mit dem Auto, mit der Familie, mit dem Kind, mit meinem Vater, mit meiner Mutter**. The verbs **stehen** (stand), **liegen** (lie) and **hängen** (hang) tell how things are placed.

PICTURE STUDY



The Embroiderer (Die Stickerin), Georg Friedrich Kersting, 1817 · Oil on canvas · National Museum, Warsaw

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Kersting painted ordinary home life with great care and stillness, a style later called Biedermeier. The light from the window falls on the woman's work, the room is orderly and simple, and every object tells of a peaceful, industrious life: music, needlework, plants and a picture of mother and child.

Look closely

- Where is the woman sitting? What is she doing?
- Find the guitar. Where is it?
- What hangs on the wall?
- What stands on the windowsill?

Talk about it

1. Describe where five things are in the room, in German with the dative.
2. What does the painting suggest about a good home?

ACTIVITY

Floor plan and house tour

Draw a floor plan of your home and give a tour in German.

You will need

- Graph paper
- Pencil and colored pencils
- Sticky notes

Steps

1. Draw a floor plan of your home and label every room with its article.
2. Draw and label at least fifteen pieces of furniture.
3. Hide an object and give clues in German with the dative: Es liegt unter dem Bett. Es steht neben dem Schrank.
4. Give a family member a tour: Das ist die Küche. Der Tisch steht am Fenster.

Tips

- Describe your dream house in five sentences.
- Label furniture around your house with sticky notes in German.

Check your work

☐ My plan has every room and fifteen labeled furniture items.

☐ I used the dative correctly in five clues.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the rooms and furniture with articles.
2. Copy the dative chart (der → dem, das → dem, die → der, plural → den).
3. Write eight sentences saying where things are in your house.
4. Copy John 14:2a in German and English.

> **From history.** The years of peace after Napoleon, from 1815 to 1848, are called the Biedermeier period in German-speaking lands, remembered for family life, house music, simple furniture and quiet domestic scenes like Kersting's.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can play Wo ist …? while tidying the house, naming where each thing belongs.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: The book is lying on the table.

▼ **Show solution**

1. der Tisch → auf dem Tisch.

Answer: Das Buch liegt auf dem Tisch.

Example 2. Say: Mama is in the kitchen.

▼ **Show solution**

1. die Küche → in der Küche.

Answer: Mama ist in der Küche.

Example 3. Say: I go with my father.

▼ **Show solution**

1. mit + dative: meinem.

Answer: Ich gehe mit meinem Vater.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is die Küche?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The kitchen.

2. Easy What is das Schlafzimmer?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The bedroom.

3. Easy Dative of der?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   dem.

4. Medium Say: in the living room.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   im Wohnzimmer.

5. Medium Say: The picture hangs on the wall.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Das Bild hängt an der Wand.

6. Medium Say: The cat is sleeping under the bed.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Die Katze schläft unter dem Bett.

7. Hard Describe Kersting's room in three sentences with the dative.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Die Frau sitzt am Fenster. Die Gitarre liegt auf dem Sofa. Die Pflanzen stehen am Fenster.

8. Hard Translate John 14:2a from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   In my Father's house are many mansions.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Using the nominative after a location word: auf der Tisch. Say auf dem Tisch.
- Saying in dem Wohnzimmer in speech. Use the short form im.
- Saying mit den Auto. Mit takes the dative: mit dem Auto.

> **Make it a game · Wo ist der Schlüssel? (Where is the key?).** One player hides a key in a room. The others ask yes-or-no questions with the dative: Ist er unter dem Sofa? Liegt er auf dem Regal? Ist er im Schrank? The finder hides it next.

> **Scripture.** “In my Father’s house are many mansions: if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you.” (John 14:2, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *In meines Vaters Hause sind viele Wohnungen.* Jesus comforts His disciples before the cross: in the Father’s house are many dwellings, and He goes to prepare a place for them. Luther’s Wohnungen means dwelling places.

UNIT 9 · MEIN TAG, MEIN HAUS: REFLEXIVE VERBEN, DATIV, MODALVERBEN · LESSON 9.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

9.3 Modalverben: können, müssen, wollen …

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate können, müssen, wollen, dürfen, sollen and möchten.
- Put the second verb at the end: Ich kann gut schwimmen.
- Ask permission and make requests.
- Read Matthew 16:24 in German.

> **Warm-up.** Can you swim? Must you do chores? May you stay up late? Should you help your neighbor? These little helping verbs are some of the most used words in German.

WATCH

The German Verb "können" - Modal Verbs - A1/A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 5:27

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=0TaknrPAqc0

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on können.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the modal verb können, about five and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

The Verb "müssen" - Modal Verbs - A1/A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 9:01

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PgVu_HEkQbM

Session 2 or 3, for müssen.

KEY TERMS

das Modalverb
The modal verb (dahs moh-DAHL-vairp).

können
Can, be able to (KÖN-nen).

müssen
Must, have to (MÜS-sen).

dürfen
May, be allowed to (DÜR-fen).

nachfolgen
To follow after (NAHKH-fol-gen).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

können
KÖN-nen
modal verb
can

müssen
MÜS-sen
modal verb
must, have to

wollen
VOL-len
modal verb
to want to

dürfen
DÜR-fen
modal verb
may

sollen
ZOL-len
modal verb
should

möchten
MÖKH-ten
modal verb
would like to

helfen
HEL-fen
verb (e→i) + dative
to help

nachfolgen
NAHKH-fol-gen
separable verb
to follow

das Modalverb
dahs moh-DAHL-vairp
das · noun
modal verb

das Kreuz
dahs KROYTS
das · noun
cross

CORE IDEAS

The story. Jesus told His disciples that He must go to Jerusalem, suffer, be killed and rise again. Peter protested, and Jesus rebuked him. Then He said: **Will mir jemand nachfolgen, der verleugne sich selbst und nehme sein Kreuz auf sich und folge mir** (If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me). Notice **will**, from wollen: following Christ is a choice of the will. Tradition records Luther's words at Worms in 1521 with another modal verb: **Hier stehe ich, ich kann nicht anders** (Here I stand, I can do no other).

How German works: the six modals. können (can), **müssen** (must), **wollen** (want to), **dürfen** (may), **sollen** (should, be supposed to), **möchten** (would like to). In the singular they change their vowel and ich and er have no ending: **ich kann, du kannst, er kann, wir können, ihr könnt, sie können**. Likewise **ich muss, du musst; ich will, du willst; ich darf, du darfst; ich soll, du sollst; ich möchte, du möchtest**.

How German works: the verb bracket. The modal is the second idea; the main verb goes to the very end as an infinitive: **Ich kann gut schwimmen. Du musst dein Zimmer aufräumen. Wir wollen am Samstag wandern.** In a question the modal comes first: **Darf ich mitkommen? Kannst du mir helfen?** The Ten Commandments use sollen: **Du sollst nicht stehlen.**

How German works: polite requests. Können Sie mir bitte helfen? Darf ich das Fenster aufmachen? Ich möchte ein Glas Wasser, bitte. Careful: **Ich muss nicht** means I do not have to; for must not, say **Ich darf nicht**: **Du darfst nicht lügen** (you must not lie).

ACTIVITY

Rules and abilities poster

Make a poster of what you can, must, may and want to do, in German.

You will need

- Poster board divided into four boxes
- Markers

Steps

1. Head the boxes Ich kann..., Ich muss..., Ich darf..., Ich will...
2. Write four sentences in each box with the main verb at the end.
3. Add a box Wir sollen... with three of the Ten Commandments in German (Du sollst nicht stehlen).
4. Present the poster to your family.

Tips

- Write five polite requests with können, dürfen and möchten.
- Interview a family member: Was kannst du gut? Was musst du heute machen?

Check your work

- ☐ Every modal is conjugated correctly.
- ☐ Every main verb is at the end.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the six modal verb charts.
2. Write two sentences for each modal.
3. Copy the warning: muss nicht vs. darf nicht.
4. Copy Matthew 16:24 (from Will mir) in German and English.

From history. At the Diet of Worms in April 1521, Luther refused to recant his writings before Emperor Charles V unless convinced by Scripture and plain reason; the famous words Hier stehe ich, ich kann nicht anders appear in the early printed accounts.

At home in German. German-speaking families can say the Ten Commandments together in Luther's Small Catechism wording, each beginning Du sollst.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: I can play the piano.

▼ **Show solution**

1. können: ich kann; spielen to the end.

Answer: Ich kann Klavier spielen.

Example 2. Ask: May I come along?

▼ **Show solution**

1. dürfen first in a question; mitkommen to the end.

Answer: Darf ich mitkommen?

Example 3. Say: You must not lie.

▼ **Show solution**

1. must not = darf nicht.

Answer: Du darfst nicht lügen.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What does Ich muss mean?

▼ **Show answer**

I must, I have to.

2. Easy du form of können?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   du kannst.

3. Easy What does dürfen mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   May, be allowed to.

4. Medium Say: We want to hike.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wir wollen wandern.

5. Medium Say: Can you help me? (Sie)

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Können Sie mir helfen?

6. Medium Say: I would like a coffee.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich möchte einen Kaffee.

7. Hard Explain the difference: Ich muss nicht gehen / Ich darf nicht gehen.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   I do not have to go / I am not allowed to go.

8. Hard Translate Matthew 16:24b from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Putting the main verb second: Ich kann schwimmen gut. Say Ich kann gut schwimmen.
- Adding -t for er: er kannt. Say er kann.
- Using muss nicht for must not. Say darf nicht.

> **Make it a game · Kannst du …?.** Each player writes five things he can do on slips (Ich kann jonglieren). Slips go into a bowl. Players draw and ask around: Kannst du jonglieren? The one who answers Ja, ich kann jonglieren! must prove it, if possible.

> **Scripture.** "Then said Jesus unto his disciples, If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Will mir jemand nachfolgen, der verleugne sich selbst* Jesus calls His disciples to deny themselves and take up the cross. Luther's Will mir jemand nachfolgen uses the modal wollen.

UNIT 10

Feste und Glaube: Weihnachten, Ostern, das Credo

Lesson 10.1 learns the words and customs of Advent and Christmas (der Adventskranz, Heiligabend, Stille Nacht) and the stem-changing verbs geben, essen, nehmen, helfen and sprechen, with Luke 2:11.

Lesson 10.2 learns the words of Holy Week and Easter, the stem-changing verbs sehen, lesen, fahren, schlafen and laufen, and studies Grünewald's Resurrection, with 1 Corinthians 15:20. Lesson 10.3 reads the first article of the Apostles' Creed in German, conjugates werden and wissen, and reviews every stem-changing verb, with Romans 10:10.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–9.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can talk about Christmas and Easter customs in German.
- ☐ I can conjugate stem-changing verbs (e→i, e→ie, a→ä, au→äu).
- ☐ I can conjugate werden and wissen.
- ☐ I can say the first article of the Apostles' Creed in German.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

10.1	**Weihnachten: Christmas and Verbs with e → i**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
10.2	**Ostern: Easter and Verbs with e → ie and a → ä**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
10.3	**Das Glaubensbekenntnis: werden and wissen**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 10 test

Unit 10 test. Questions 1–2 are oral. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Describe how your family celebrates Christmas, in four sentences.
2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Say the first article of the Apostles' Creed in German.
3. **5 pts**
   Conjugate geben for ich, du, er, wir.
4. **5 pts**
   Write the er-form: essen, nehmen, helfen, sprechen, sehen.
5. **5 pts**
   Write the du-form: fahren, schlafen, laufen, lesen, tragen.

6. **5 pts**

   Conjugate werden for ich, du, er, wir.

7. **5 pts**

   Conjugate wissen for ich, du, er, wir.

8. **5 pts**

   Write: Peter runs to the tomb. He sees the linen clothes.

9. **5 pts**

   Write Luke 2:11 (to der HERR) in German and translate.

10. **5 pts**

    Describe Grünewald's Resurrection in three German sentences.

ANSWER KEY

1. For example: Am Heiligabend gehen wir in die Kirche. Wir singen Stille Nacht. Dann gibt es Geschenke. Am ersten Weihnachtstag essen wir Gans.
2. Ich glaube an Gott, den Vater, den Allmächtigen, den Schöpfer des Himmels und der Erde.
3. ich gebe, du gibst, er gibt, wir geben.
4. er isst, er nimmt, er hilft, er spricht, er sieht.
5. du fährst, du schläfst, du läufst, du liest, du trägst.
6. ich werde, du wirst, er wird, wir werden.
7. ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, wir wissen.
8. Petrus läuft zum Grab. Er sieht die Leinentücher.
9. denn euch ist heute der Heiland geboren, welcher ist Christus, der HERR. For unto you is born this day … a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.
10. For example: Christus steigt aus dem Grab. Hinter ihm ist eine große Sonne. Die Soldaten fallen auf den Boden.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: DAS KIRCHENJAHR (THE CHURCH YEAR) IN GERMAN

Make an illustrated booklet of the Church year in German, with one page each for Advent, Christmas, Epiphany, Holy Week, Easter, Ascension, Pentecost and Reformation Day. On each page write the German name and date, a verse from the Luther Bible with its KJV translation, and three sentences on how German-speaking Christians celebrate, using at least six stem-changing verbs. Then recite Luke 2:8–11 or the first article of the Creed in German for your family.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Content	Eight feasts with correct names and dates.
Verbs	Six stem-changing verbs used correctly.
Scripture	Exact Luther and KJV verses.
Recitation	Clear, accurate German.

UNIT 10 · FESTE UND GLAUBE: WEIHNACHTEN, OSTERN, DAS CREDO · LESSON 10.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

10.1 Weihnachten: Christmas and Verbs with e → i

OBJECTIVES

- Name the customs of Advent and Christmas in German-speaking lands.
- Conjugate verbs that change e to i: geben, essen, nehmen, helfen, sprechen.
- Use es gibt (there is, there are).
- Read Luke 2:11 in German.

> **Warm-up.** Many Christmas customs Americans love, the Christmas tree, the Advent wreath, Silent Night, came from German-speaking lands. Today you learn their German names and the verbs that change their vowel.

WATCH

How do German People Celebrate Christmas?

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 4:15

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=X9doM4_BjeI

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the story.

Note: GermanPod101 on how Germans celebrate Christmas, about four minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn German Holidays - Christmas Eve

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 2:49

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Q9iafo3kcKE

Session 2 or 3: the German Christmas Eve, Heiligabend.

KEY TERMS

Weihnachten
Christmas (VY-nahkh-ten).

der Advent
Advent, the four weeks before Christmas (dehr aht-VENT).

der Heiligabend
Christmas Eve (dehr HY-likh-ah-bent).

der Heiland
The Saviour (dehr HY-lahnt).

die Krippe
The manger (dee KRIP-puh).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

Weihnachten

VY-nahkh-ten

noun (plural form)

Christmas

der Heiligabend

dehr HY-likh-ah-bent

der · noun

Christmas Eve

der Tannenbaum

dehr TAHN-nen-bowm

der · noun

fir tree, Christmas tree

die Kerze

dee KAIR-tsuh

die · noun

candle

das Geschenk

dahs guh-SHENK

das · noun

present

geben

GAY-ben

verb (e → i)

to give

nehmen

NAY-men

verb (e → i)

to take

es gibt

es GIPT

phrase

there is, there are

der Advent

dehr aht-VENT

der · noun

Advent

die Krippe

dee KRIP-puh

die · noun

manger

CORE IDEAS

The story. On Christmas Eve 1818, in the village church of St. Nicholas in Oberndorf near Salzburg, the assistant priest Joseph Mohr and the schoolteacher and organist Franz Xaver Gruber sang a new carol for the first time, with a guitar: **Stille Nacht, heilige Nacht.** It tells the message the angel brought to the shepherds: **denn euch ist heute der Heiland geboren, welcher ist Christus, der HERR, in der Stadt Davids** (for unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord). Today it has been translated into hundreds of languages.

How German works: Christmas words. der Advent, der Adventskranz (Advent wreath; four candles, one more lit each Sunday), **der Adventskalender, der Nikolaustag** (December 6), **der Weihnachtsmarkt** (Christmas market), **der Weihnachtsbaum / der Tannenbaum, die Kerze** (candle), **das Geschenk** (present), **der Heiligabend** (December 24), **der erste und zweite Weihnachtstag** (December 25 and 26). Wish: **Frohe Weihnachten! Gesegnete Weihnachten!**

How German works: verbs with e → i. Some strong verbs change e to i in the du and er/sie/es forms only: **geben: ich gebe, du gibst, er gibt**, wir geben, ihr gebt, sie geben. Likewise **essen → du isst, er isst; nehmen → du nimmst, er nimmt; helfen → du hilfst, er hilft; sprechen → du sprichst, er spricht.** The du imperative changes too: **Gib! Iss! Nimm! Hilf! Sprich!**

How German works: es gibt. es gibt + accusative means there is, there are: **Am Heiligabend gibt es Geschenke. Auf dem Weihnachtsmarkt gibt es Lebkuchen und Glühwein. Es gibt einen Tannenbaum im Wohnzimmer.** In most German families the presents are opened on Christmas Eve (**die Bescherung**), often after the evening church service.

ACTIVITY

Adventskranz and Christmas card

Make an Advent wreath or a German Christmas card and present it in German.

You will need

- Greenery or green paper, four candles (or paper candles)
- Card stock and markers

Steps

1. Make a simple Advent wreath, or draw one on a card, with four candles.
2. Write inside the card Frohe Weihnachten! and Luke 2:11 in German.
3. Write five sentences about your family's Christmas with es gibt and stem-changing verbs: Papa gibt Mama ein Geschenk.
4. Sing the first verse of Stille Nacht in German.

Tips

- Make a German Advent calendar with a German word behind each door.
- Bake Lebkuchen or Plätzchen and name the ingredients in German.

Check your work

☐ My card has Luke 2:11 in German, copied exactly.

☐ I used four e → i verbs correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy twelve Christmas words with articles.
2. Copy the charts for geben, essen, nehmen, helfen, sprechen.
3. Write five sentences with es gibt.
4. Copy Luke 2:11 in German and English.

> **From history.** The Advent wreath was invented in 1839 by the Lutheran pastor Johann Hinrich Wichern in Hamburg, for the poor boys of his home, the Rauhes Haus: he put a candle on a wagon wheel for each day of Advent; later the wreath shrank to four candles for the four Sundays.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can light the Advent wreath on Sunday evenings and sing Macht hoch die Tür together.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: He gives his mother a present.

▼ **Show solution**

1. geben → er gibt; ein Geschenk (accusative, neuter).

Answer: Er gibt seiner Mutter ein Geschenk.

Example 2. Say: There is a Christmas tree in the living room.

▼ **Show solution**

1. es gibt + accusative: einen.

Answer: Es gibt einen Weihnachtsbaum im Wohnzimmer.

Example 3. Ask a friend: Are you eating Lebkuchen?

▼ **Show solution**

1. essen → du isst.

Answer: Isst du Lebkuchen?

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is der Heiligabend?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Christmas Eve.

2. Easy What is die Kerze?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The candle.

3. Easy er-form of geben?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   er gibt.

4. Medium du-form of sprechen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   du sprichst.

5. Medium Say: She helps her father.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Sie hilft ihrem Vater.

6. Medium Say: There are presents.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Es gibt Geschenke.

7. Hard Write three sentences about a German Christmas market.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Auf dem Weihnachtsmarkt gibt es Lebkuchen. Mein Bruder isst eine Bratwurst. Wir singen Weihnachtslieder.

8. Hard Translate Luke 2:11 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Changing the vowel for ich: ich gibe. Only du and er/sie/es change: ich gebe.
- Saying es gibt ein Tannenbaum. Es gibt takes the accusative: einen Tannenbaum.
- Changing the vowel in the plural: wir gibt. Say wir geben.

> **Make it a game · Weihnachtsmarkt (Christmas market).** Set up a pretend Christmas market with paper items and prices. Shoppers ask Was gibt es hier? Was kostet der Lebkuchen? Sellers answer with es gibt and prices. Each sentence with a stem-changing verb (Ich nehme..., Er gibt mir...) earns a point.

> **Scripture.** “For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.” (Luke 2:11, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *denn euch ist heute der Heiland geboren, welcher ist Christus, der HERR* The angel’s message to the shepherds of Bethlehem: the Saviour is born. Luther’s word der Heiland, the one who heals and saves, is still the German word for the Saviour.

UNIT 10 · FESTE UND GLAUBE: WEIHNACHTEN, OSTERN, DAS CREDO · LESSON 10.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

10.2 Ostern: Easter and Verbs with e → ie and a → ä

OBJECTIVES

- Name the days of Holy Week and Easter in German.
- Conjugate sehen, lesen, fahren, schlafen and laufen.
- Describe Grünewald’s Resurrection.
- Read 1 Corinthians 15:20 in German.

> **Warm-up.** What is the greatest day of the Christian year? Not Christmas, but Easter, for without the resurrection our faith is vain. Today you learn Easter in German and look at the most dazzling Resurrection ever painted.

WATCH

German Lesson - How to Say "Happy Easter" - Explaining Easter Holiday Traditions - A2/B1

lingoni GERMAN · 6:39

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9ulgR8v5MaY

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the story. The video is pitched a little above this level; pause often.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on how to say Happy Easter and Easter traditions, about six and a half minutes (A2/B1).

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn German Holidays - Easter Sunday

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 3:12

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cd_u0Mk7xz4

Session 2 or 3: Easter Sunday in Germany.

KEY TERMS

Ostern
Easter (OH-stern).

auferstehen
To rise from the dead (OWF-air-shtay-en).

der Erstling
The firstfruits (dehr AIRST-ling).

der Karfreitag
Good Friday (dehr kar-FRY-tahk).

das Grab
The tomb, grave (dahs GRAHP).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

Ostern
OH-stern
noun
Easter

der Karfreitag
dehr kar-FRY-tahk
der · noun
Good Friday

das Grab
dahs GRAHP
das · noun
tomb, grave

auferstehen
OWF-air-shtay-en
separable verb
to rise again

sehen
ZAY-en
verb (e → ie)
to see

lesen
LAY-zen
verb (e → ie)
to read

laufen
LOW-fen
verb (au → äu)
to run

schlafen
SHLAH-fen
verb (a → ä)
to sleep

das Osterei
dahs OH-ster-eye
das · noun
Easter egg

die Karwoche
dee KAR-vo-khuh
die · noun
Holy Week

CORE IDEAS

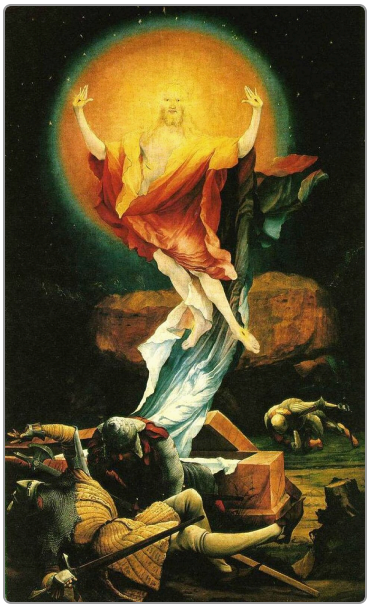
The story. Early on the first day of the week Mary Magdalene found the stone rolled away and ran to tell Peter and John. The two disciples ran to the tomb together, and John, Luther writes, ran **schneller denn Petrus** (faster than Peter). They saw the linen clothes lying there, and the napkin folded by itself. Christ was risen. Paul writes: **Nun ist aber Christus auferstanden von den Toten und der Erstling geworden unter denen, die da schlafen** (But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept). On Easter morning many Christians greet each other: **Der Herr ist auferstanden! — Er ist wahrhaftig auferstanden!**

How German works: Holy Week and Easter. die Karwoche (Holy Week), **der Palmsonntag, der Gründonnerstag** (Maundy Thursday), **der Karfreitag** (Good Friday), **der Karsamstag, der Ostersonntag, der Ostermontag** (a public holiday). **das Osterei, der Osterhase** (Easter bunny), **das Osterfeuer** (Easter bonfire), **das leere Grab** (the empty tomb). Wish: **Frohe Ostern! Gesegnete Ostern!**

How German works: e → ie. sehen: ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht; lesen: ich lese, du liest, er liest. Plural forms keep e: **wir sehen, wir lesen. Johannes sieht das leere Grab. Der Pfarrer liest das Evangelium.**

How German works: a → ä and au → äu. fahren: du fährst, er fährt; schlafen: du schläfst, er schläft; tragen: du trägst, er trägt; laufen: du läufst, er läuft. Johannes läuft schneller als Petrus. Note: these verbs have no vowel change in the imperative: **Fahr! Schlaf! Lauf!**

PICTURE STUDY



The Resurrection (Isenheim Altarpiece), Matthias Grünewald, 1512–1516 · Oil on panel · Musée Unterlinden, Colmar

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Grünewald painted the risen body of Christ as pure light, full of glory, yet still bearing the wounds of the cross. The colors move from the cold blue of death at the tomb to the warm gold of the risen Lord. The altarpiece was made for the hospital of the monks of St. Anthony at Isenheim, where suffering patients could look on it and remember that the body will rise again.

Look closely

- What color is the light behind Christ?
- What do you see in His hands?
- What are the soldiers doing?
- Follow the shroud from the coffin up to Christ. How do its colors change?

Talk about it

1. Describe the painting in German with sehen, fallen and the present tense.
2. Why might this picture have comforted sick patients in a hospital?

ACTIVITY

Easter story retelling

Retell the Easter morning story in German in the present tense.

You will need

- Paper divided into six boxes
- Colored pencils

Steps

1. Draw six scenes: the women go to the tomb; the stone is rolled away; Mary runs to Peter; Peter and John run; John runs faster; they see the linen clothes.
2. Caption each scene in German with a stem-changing verb: Maria läuft zu Petrus. Johannes sieht das leere Grab.
3. Read your retelling aloud to your family on Easter.
4. Add the greeting Der Herr ist auferstanden! at the end.

Tips

- Decorate eggs with German words: Frohe Ostern! Er lebt!
- Learn the first verse of the Easter hymn Christ ist erstanden.

Check your work

☐ My six captions use five different stem-changing verbs.

☐ The story follows John 20.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the days of Holy Week and Easter.
2. Copy the charts for sehen, lesen, fahren, schlafen, laufen.
3. Write your six-sentence Easter retelling.
4. Copy 1 Corinthians 15:20 in German and English.

From history. Grünewald's real name was Mathis Gothart Nithart; the name Grünewald was given to him by mistake more than a century after his death. The twentieth-century composer Paul Hindemith wrote an opera about him, Mathis der Maler (Mathis the Painter).

At home in German. German-speaking families can greet one another on Easter morning with Der Herr ist auferstanden! — Er ist wahrhaftig auferstanden!

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: John runs faster than Peter.

▼ **Show solution**

1. laufen → er läuft; faster than: schneller als.

Answer: Johannes läuft schneller als Petrus.

Example 2. Ask a friend: Do you see the empty tomb?

▼ **Show solution**

1. sehen → du siehst.

Answer: Siehst du das leere Grab?

Example 3. Say: The baby is sleeping.

▼ **Show solution**

1. schlafen → es schläft.

Answer: Das Baby schläft.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What is der Karfreitag?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Good Friday.

2. Easy What is das Osterei?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The Easter egg.

3. Easy er-form of sehen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   er sieht.

4. Medium du-form of laufen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   du läufst.

5. Medium Say: She is reading the Bible.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Sie liest die Bibel.

6. Medium Say: He drives to church.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Er fährt zur Kirche.

7. Hard Give the Easter greeting and its answer.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Der Herr ist auferstanden! — Er ist wahrhaftig auferstanden!

8. Hard Translate 1 Corinthians 15:20 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying er seht. Sehen changes: er sieht.
- Saying er lauft. Laufen changes au to äu: er läuft.
- Changing the vowel in the imperative: Fähr! For a → ä verbs, say Fahr!

Make it a game · Ostereiersuche (Easter egg hunt). Hide plastic eggs with slips inside. Each slip has a verb and a person (laufen / er). The finder must say the correct form in a sentence (Er läuft schnell) to keep the egg. Most eggs wins.

Scripture. "But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept." (1 Corinthians 15:20, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *Nun ist aber Christus auferstanden von den Toten* Christ is the firstfruits of the resurrection: as the first sheaf of harvest promised the rest, His rising promises ours. Luther uses schlafen, to sleep, for those who have died in Christ.

UNIT 10 · FESTE UND GLAUBE: WEIHNACHTEN, OSTERN, DAS CREDO · LESSON 10.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

10.3 Das Glaubensbekenntnis: werden and wissen

OBJECTIVES

- Say the first article of the Apostles' Creed in German.
- Conjugate werden (to become) and wissen (to know a fact).
- Distinguish wissen from kennen.
- Review all stem-changing verbs; read Romans 10:10 in German.

Warm-up. For nearly two thousand years Christians have confessed their faith in the words of the Apostles' Creed. Today you learn its first article in German and two important irregular verbs, werden and wissen.

WATCH

Learn About Vowel-Changing Verbs in German | Daily German Conversations #12

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 4:11

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GnhLJVmPzDE

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, for the review of vowel-changing verbs.

Note: GermanPod101 Daily German Conversations on vowel-changing verbs, about four minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

SPRECHEN in the Present Tense - Mastering German Verbs

Learn German with GermanPod101.com · 2:30

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Vsvk7E8r9yo

Session 2 or 3: drill sprechen in the present tense.

KEY TERMS

das Glaubensbekenntnis

The creed (dahs GLOW-bens-buh-kent-nis).

glauben an

To believe in (GLOW-ben ahn).

der Schöpfer

The Creator (dehr SHÖP-fer).

allmächtig

Almighty (ahl-MEKH-tikh).

selig

Blessed, saved (ZAY-likh).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

glauben an
GLOW-ben ahn
verb + accusative
to believe in

der Schöpfer
dehr SHÖP-fer
der · noun
Creator

allmächtig
ahl-MEKH-tikh
adjective
almighty

werden
VAIR-den
irregular verb
to become

wissen
VIS-sen
irregular verb
to know (a fact)

kennen
KEN-nen
verb
to know (a person, place)

bekennen
buh-KEN-nen
verb
to confess

der Himmel
dehr HIM-mel
der · noun
heaven, sky

die Kirche
dee KEER-khuh
die · noun
church

selig
ZAY-likh
adjective
blessed, saved

CORE IDEAS

The story. In his Small Catechism of 1529, Luther taught fathers to explain the Creed to their households, article by article, asking after each: **Was ist das?** (What does this mean?). The first article in today's common German wording: **Ich glaube an Gott, den Vater, den Allmächtigen, den Schöpfer des Himmels und der Erde.** Paul explains why we say it aloud: **Denn so man von Herzen glaubt, so wird man gerecht; und so man mit dem Munde bekennt, so wird man selig** (For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation). Notice **wird**, from werden.

How German works: werden. **werden** means to become: **ich werde, du wirst, er wird, wir werden, ihr werdet, sie werden**. **Ich werde sechzehn. Es wird kalt. Er wird Pfarrer** (no article for a profession). Later, werden will also form the future: **Er wird kommen** (he will come), as the traditional Lutheran wording of the Creed says of Christ: **von dannen er kommen wird, zu richten die Lebendigen und die Toten**.

How German works: wissen and kennen. **wissen** (to know a fact) is irregular in the singular: **ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, wir wissen, ihr wisst, sie wissen**. Job says: **Aber ich weiß, daß mein Erlöser lebt** (For I know that my redeemer liveth). **kennen** means to know a person or place: **Ich kenne Herrn Schmidt. Kennst du Berlin? Weißt du, wo er wohnt?** (Do you know where he lives?)

How German works: stem-changing review. e → i: **geben, essen, nehmen, helfen, sprechen**. e → ie: **sehen, lesen**. a → ä: **fahren, schlafen, tragen**. au → äu: **laufen**. Only du and er/sie/es change. Mark them in your verb list with a star and practice them aloud every day this week.

ACTIVITY

Creed card and verb wheel

Memorize the first article of the Creed in German and make a stem-changing verb wheel.

You will need

- Card stock, a paper fastener, scissors
- Markers

Steps

1. Copy the first article of the Creed on a card and memorize it.
2. Make a verb wheel: an outer circle with twelve stem-changing verbs and werden and wissen, an inner circle with ich, du, er, wir; turn and say the form.
3. Write five sentences with wissen and five with kennen.
4. Recite the first article to your family.

Tips

- Memorize the second and third articles in German.
- Read Luther's explanation of the first article in the Small Catechism in German.

Check your work

☐ I can recite the first article without a mistake.

☐ I can conjugate werden and wissen.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the first article of the Creed in German and English.
2. Copy the charts for werden and wissen.
3. Copy the wissen / kennen rule with two examples each.
4. Copy Romans 10:10 in German and English.

> **From history.** Luther's Small Catechism (1529), with its questions Was ist das?, became one of the most widely printed books in German, and generations of German children memorized it at home and in church.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can say the Apostles' Creed together in German on Sunday.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: It is getting cold.

▼ **Show solution**

1. werden → es wird.

Answer: Es wird kalt.

Example 2. Ask: Do you know where the church is?

▼ **Show solution**

1. A fact: wissen → du weißt.

Answer: Weißt du, wo die Kirche ist?

Example 3. Say: I know Mrs. Weber.

▼ **Show solution**

1. A person: kennen.

Answer: Ich kenne Frau Weber.

PRACTICE

1. Easy What does Ich glaube an Gott mean?

▼ **Show answer**

I believe in God.

2. Easy er-form of werden?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   er wird.

3. Easy ich-form of wissen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   ich weiß.

4. Medium Say: He is becoming a doctor.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Er wird Arzt.

5. Medium wissen or kennen: Ich ___ Berlin.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   kenne.

6. Medium Say: You (du) know the answer.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Du weißt die Antwort.

7. Hard Say the first article of the Creed in German.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich glaube an Gott, den Vater, den Allmächtigen, den Schöpfer des Himmels und der Erde.

8. Hard Translate Romans 10:10 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying er werdet. Say er wird.
- Saying ich weiße. Say ich weiß.
- Using wissen for people: Ich weiß Herrn Schmidt. Say Ich kenne Herrn Schmidt.

Make it a game · Verb-Duell. Two players stand back to back. The caller says a verb and a person (laufen, du!). The first to turn and say the right form (du läufst!) wins the round. Include werden and wissen.

Scripture. "For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation." (Romans 10:10, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *Denn so man von Herzen glaubt, so wird man gerecht* Faith in the heart and confession with the mouth belong together: this is why Christians say the Creed aloud. Luther's so wird man selig uses werden.

UNIT 11

Was hast du gemacht? Das Perfekt

Lesson 11.1 forms the Perfekt of regular verbs with haben and ge-...-t (ich habe gespielt), places the participle at the end, and studies Stieler's Beethoven, with 2 Timothy 4:7.

Lesson 11.2 learns twenty irregular participles (gesehen, gegessen, getrunken, geschrieben) and the participles of separable and inseparable verbs (eingekauft, besucht), with Luke 2:30. Lesson 11.3 uses sein with verbs of motion and change (ich bin gefahren, er ist geworden), with Psalm 37:25.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–10.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can form the Perfekt of regular verbs with haben.
- ☐ I can use twenty irregular participles.
- ☐ I can choose haben or sein correctly.
- ☐ I can tell what I did yesterday or last weekend.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

11.1	**Das Perfekt mit haben: Regular Verbs**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
11.2	**Unregelmäßige Partizipien: Irregular Participles**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
11.3	**Das Perfekt mit sein: Motion and Change**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 11 test

Unit 11 test. Questions 1–2 are oral. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Tell what you did last weekend in four sentences.
2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Answer: Was hast du gestern gemacht? (three sentences)
3. **5 pts**
   Write the participle: spielen, machen, kaufen, lernen, hören.
4. **5 pts**
   Write the participle: sehen, essen, trinken, schreiben, lesen.
5. **5 pts**
   Write the participle: einkaufen, aufstehen, besuchen, studieren, anrufen.

6. **5 pts**

   haben or sein? ich ___ gegangen; er ___ gegessen; wir ___ gefahren; du ___ geblieben; sie ___ geschlafen.

7. **5 pts**

   Write in the Perfekt: Ich kaufe Brot. Er trinkt Milch.

8. **5 pts**

   Write in the Perfekt: Wir fahren nach Berlin. Sie wird Lehrerin.

9. **5 pts**

   Write 2 Timothy 4:7 in German and translate.

10. **5 pts**

    Tell three things Beethoven did, in the Perfekt.

ANSWER KEY

1. For example: Am Samstag habe ich Fußball gespielt. Am Sonntag sind wir in die Kirche gegangen. Dann haben wir gegessen. Abends habe ich gelesen.
2. For example: Ich habe Mathe gelernt. Ich habe meiner Mutter geholfen. Ich bin früh ins Bett gegangen.
3. gespielt, gemacht, gekauft, gelernt, gehört.
4. gesehen, gegessen, getrunken, geschrieben, gelesen.
5. eingekauft, aufgestanden, besucht, studiert, angerufen.
6. bin, hat, sind, bist, hat.
7. Ich habe Brot gekauft. Er hat Milch getrunken.
8. Wir sind nach Berlin gefahren. Sie ist Lehrerin geworden.
9. Ich habe einen guten Kampf gekämpft, ich habe den Lauf vollendet, ich habe Glauben gehalten. I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith.
10. For example: Beethoven hat in Bonn gelebt. Er ist nach Wien gezogen. Er hat neun Sinfonien komponiert.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: MEIN TAGEBUCH AND A FAMOUS GERMAN LIFE

Keep a German diary (Tagebuch) for one week, writing five sentences in the Perfekt each evening about what you did that day. Then write and present a one-page biography in the Perfekt of a famous German-speaking Christian or composer (Luther, Bach, Handel, Beethoven, Paul Gerhardt or Mendelssohn): where he was born, what he did, where he went, what he wrote. Use at least ten different participles, including four with sein.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Perfekt	Correct auxiliary and participle at the end.
Range	Ten different participles, four with sein.
Content	Accurate biography facts.
Delivery	Diary complete; biography presented clearly.

UNIT 11 · WAS HAST DU GEMACHT? DAS PERFEKT · LESSON 11.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

11.1 Das Perfekt mit haben: Regular Verbs

OBJECTIVES

- Form the Perfekt with haben and ge-...-t.
- Put the participle at the end of the sentence.
- Describe Stieler's Beethoven.
- Read 2 Timothy 4:7 in German.

> **Warm-up.** What did you do yesterday? Until now you could only talk about the present. Today you learn the tense Germans use most for the past in conversation, the Perfekt.

WATCH

The Perfect Tense in German - Part 1: Regular Verbs - A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 5:35

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4rSK-gthHgE

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the Perfekt of regular verbs, about five and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Listening Comprehension for Beginners - Hast du schon gefrühstückt? - A1/A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 2:02

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XV8ATyPxbf4

Session 2 or 3: a short listening exercise, Hast du schon gefrühstückt?

KEY TERMS

das Perfekt
The present perfect tense (dahs per-FEKT).

das Partizip
The participle (dahs par-tee-TSEEP).

komponieren
To compose (kom-poh-NEE-ren).

der Kampf
The fight (dehr KAHMPF).

vollenden
To finish, complete (fol-EN-den).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

das Perfekt
dahs per-FEKT
das · noun
present perfect tense

gestern
GES-tern
adverb
yesterday

gespielt
guh-SHPEELT
participle (spielen)
played

gemacht
guh-MAHKHT
participle (machen)
done, made

gekauft
guh-KOWFT
participle (kaufen)
bought

gearbeitet
guh-AR-by-tet
participle (arbeiten)
worked

besucht
buh-ZOOKHT
participle (besuchen)
visited

komponiert
kom-poh-NEERT
participle (komponieren)
composed

das Partizip
dahs par-tee-TSEEP
das · noun
participle

der Kampf
dehr KAHMPF
der · noun
fight

CORE IDEAS

The story. Ludwig van Beethoven was born in Bonn in 1770 and moved to Vienna as a young man. In his late twenties he began to go deaf, and by his last years he could hardly hear at all. Yet he kept composing: the Ninth Symphony and the great Mass in D, the Missa solemnis, were written when he was almost entirely deaf. On the score of the Mass he wrote: **Von Herzen – möge es wieder – zu Herzen gehen!** (From the heart, may it go again to the heart!). Paul, near the end of his life, wrote from prison in the Perfekt: **Ich habe einen guten Kampf gekämpft, ich habe den Lauf vollendet,**

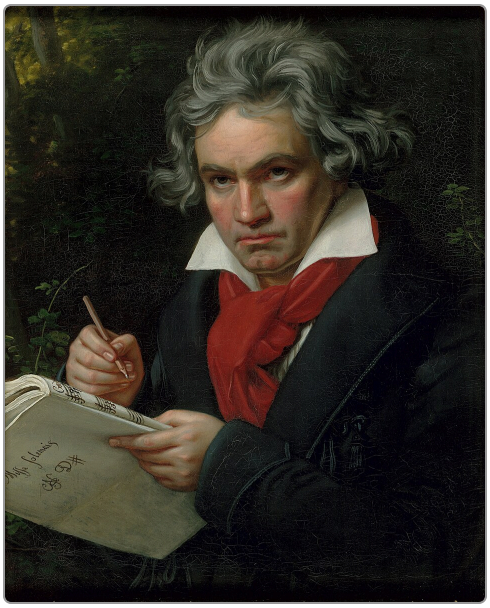
ich habe Glauben gehalten (I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith).

How German works: the Perfekt. German talks about the past in conversation with two parts: a form of **haben** in second place and a **participle** at the very end: **Ich habe Fußball gespielt.** (I played soccer; I have played soccer.) **Hast du die Hausaufgaben gemacht? Wir haben Brot gekauft.** The participle never changes; only haben changes: **ich habe, du hast, er hat, wir haben, ihr habt, sie haben** + gespielt.

How German works: regular participles. Take the stem and put **ge-** before and **-t** after: **spielen → gespielt, machen → gemacht, kaufen → gekauft, lernen → gelernt, hören → gehört, wohnen → gewohnt, sagen → gesagt.** Stems ending in -t or -d add -et: **arbeiten → gearbeitet, warten → gewartet.** Verbs ending in **-ieren** take no ge-: **komponieren → komponiert, studieren → studiert.** Verbs beginning with be-, ver-, er-, ge- take no ge- either: **besuchen → besucht, erzählen → erzählt.**

How German works: talking about the past. Time words: **gestern** (yesterday), **vorgestern, letzte Woche, letztes Jahr, am Wochenende.** With time first, the verb stays second: **Gestern habe ich meine Oma besucht.** Questions: **Was hast du gestern gemacht? Hast du gut geschlafen?** Beethoven: **Er hat in Wien gewohnt. Er hat neun Sinfonien komponiert.**

PICTURE STUDY



Beethoven with the Manuscript of the Missa solemnis, Joseph Karl Stieler, 1820 · Oil on canvas · Beethoven-Haus, Bonn

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Stieler shows the composer at work, outdoors among the trees where Beethoven loved to walk and think. The red scarf draws the eye to his face and the pencil, and the frowning concentration tells of the struggle of creation. Beethoven was an impatient sitter, but this became one of the best-known pictures of him.

Look closely

- What is Beethoven holding in each hand?
- What is written on the manuscript?
- Describe his hair and his expression.
- Where does he seem to be? What is behind him?

Talk about it

1. Describe the painting in German in the present tense, then say three things Beethoven did, in the Perfekt.
2. Why might Stieler have painted him outdoors instead of at a piano?

ACTIVITY

Gestern: a Perfekt diary

Keep a short diary in the Perfekt and interview your family about yesterday.

You will need

- A small notebook (your Tagebuch)
- A pencil

Steps

1. Each evening for three days, write five sentences about what you did, with haben and regular participles.
2. Interview two family members: Was hast du gestern gemacht? Write their answers in the er/sie form: Papa hat gearbeitet.
3. Listen to a movement of a Beethoven symphony and write two sentences: Ich habe die Musik gehört. Sie hat mir gefallen.
4. Read your diary aloud.

Tips

- Write five sentences about Beethoven's life in the Perfekt.
- Learn the melody of Ode to Joy and its first German line, Freude, schöner Götterfunken.

Check your work

☐ My participles are formed correctly.

☐ Every participle is at the end of the sentence.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the rule for regular participles with ten examples.
2. Copy the exceptions: -ieren, be-, ver-, er-.
3. Write your best diary entry.
4. Copy 2 Timothy 4:7 in German and English.

> **From history.** Beethoven's Ninth Symphony (1824) ends with a choir singing Friedrich Schiller's poem An die Freude; at the first performance the deaf composer had to be turned around to see the audience applauding.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can ask at dinner Was hast du heute gemacht? and answer in the Perfekt.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: I played the piano yesterday.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Gestern first, habe second, gespielt at the end.

Answer: Gestern habe ich Klavier gespielt.

Example 2. Ask: Did you do your homework?

▼ **Show solution**

1. hast du … gemacht.

Answer: Hast du deine Hausaufgaben gemacht?

Example 3. Say: He visited his grandmother.

▼ **Show solution**

1. besuchen: no ge-.

Answer: Er hat seine Oma besucht.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Participle of machen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   gemacht.

2. Easy Participle of hören?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   gehört.

3. Easy What is gestern?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Yesterday.

4. Medium Participle of arbeiten?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   gearbeitet.

5. Medium Participle of studieren?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   studiert.

6. Medium Say: We bought bread.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wir haben Brot gekauft.

7. Hard Write three sentences about your last Sunday in the Perfekt.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Am Sonntag haben wir gebetet. Wir haben Lieder gesungen. Danach habe ich mit meinem Bruder gespielt.

8. Hard Translate 2 Timothy 4:7 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Putting the participle second: Ich habe gespielt Fußball. Say Ich habe Fußball gespielt.
- Adding ge- to -ieren verbs: gestudiert. Say studiert.
- Forgetting -et after t: gearbeit. Say gearbeitet.

Make it a game · Was habe ich gemacht?. One player mimes something he did yesterday (cooked, played guitar, bought something). The others guess in the Perfekt: Du hast gekocht! Du hast Gitarre gespielt! A correct guess with a correct participle wins the turn.

Scripture. “I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith:” (2 Timothy 4:7, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *Ich habe einen guten Kampf gekämpft* Paul, near the end of his life, looks back on his ministry. Luther’s German is three sentences in the Perfekt, each with habe and a participle at the end.

UNIT 11 · WAS HAST DU GEMACHT? DAS PERFEKT · LESSON 11.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

11.2 Unregelmässige Partizipien: Irregular Participles

OBJECTIVES

- Learn twenty irregular participles ending in -en.
- Form participles of separable verbs (eingekauft, aufgestanden).
- Tell about a past weekend.
- Read Luke 2:30 in German.

Warm-up. In English we say played but saw, ate, drank. German has irregular verbs too, and their participles end in -en, often with a new vowel. Today you learn the most common ones.

WATCH

The Perfect Tense in German - Part 4: Irregular Verbs - A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 7:23

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nZ97SUw4alA

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the Perfekt of irregular verbs, about seven and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

How to Say "How was your weekend?" and more useful German phrases - A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 6:34

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=b0iGwNb8Y40

Session 2 or 3: asking Wie war dein Wochenende? and answering.

KEY TERMS

unregelmäßig
Irregular (OON-ray-gel-may-sikh).

gesehen
Seen (guh-ZAY-en).

der Heiland
The Saviour (dehr HY-lahnt).

der Tempel
The temple (dehr TEM-pel).

das Wochenende
The weekend (dahs VOKH-en-en-duh).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

gesehen
guh-ZAY-en
participle (sehen)
seen

gegessen
guh-GES-sen
participle (essen)
eaten

getrunken
guh-TROON-ken
participle (trinken)
drunk

gesungen
guh-ZOONG-en
participle (singen)
sung

geschrieben
guh-SHREE-ben
participle (schreiben)
written

gesprochen
guh-SHPROKH-en
participle (sprechen)
spoken

gewusst
guh-VOOST
participle (wissen)
known

verstanden
fair-SHTAHN-den
participle (verstehen)
understood

das Wochenende
dahs VOKH-en-en-duh
das · noun
weekend

gebetet
guh-BAY-tet
participle (beten)
prayed

CORE IDEAS

The story. Forty days after Jesus was born, Mary and Joseph brought Him to the temple in Jerusalem. An old man named Simeon was there, just and devout, who had been promised by the Holy Ghost that he would not die before he had seen the Lord's Christ. He took the child in his arms and blessed God: Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, **denn meine Augen haben deinen Heiland gesehen** (for mine eyes have seen thy salvation). Notice **haben … gesehen**: an irregular participle.

How German works: irregular participles. Irregular verbs take **ge-** and **-en**, and many change their vowel. Learn them in groups: same vowel: **sehen → gesehen,**

lesen → gelesen, essen → gegessen, geben → gegeben, schlafen → geschlafen, tragen → getragen. Vowel to u or o: **trinken → getrunken, singen → gesungen, finden → gefunden, sprechen → gesprochen, helfen → geholfen, nehmen → genommen.** ei → ie: **schreiben → geschrieben, leihen → geliehen.** Careful: **beten** (to pray) is regular: **gebetet.**

How German works: a few mixed verbs. Some have a vowel change but end in -t: **bringen → gebracht, denken → gedacht, kennen → gekannt, wissen → gewusst.** And **haben → gehabt**. Practice: **Ich habe einen Brief geschrieben. Wir haben Lieder gesungen. Hast du das gewusst?**

How German works: separable and inseparable verbs. Separable verbs put **ge** between prefix and stem: **einkaufen → eingekauft, anrufen → angerufen, fernsehen → ferngesehen.** Inseparable verbs (be-, ver-, er-, ent-, ge-) take no ge-: **verstehen → verstanden, bekommen → bekommen, vergessen → vergessen. Ich habe Oma angerufen. Ich habe die Frage nicht verstanden.**

ACTIVITY

Wochenende interview

Interview family members about last weekend and write a report in the Perfekt.

You will need

- Paper and pencil
- Flashcards for twenty irregular participles

Steps

1. Make flashcards with the infinitive on the front and the participle on the back.
2. Interview three people: Wie war dein Wochenende? Was hast du gemacht? Hast du etwas gelesen? Was hast du gegessen?
3. Write a report: Mama hat ein Buch gelesen. Papa hat den Rasen gemäht.
4. Use at least eight irregular participles.

Tips

- Retell the story of Simeon in the Perfekt in five sentences.
- Sort your participle cards by vowel change.

Check your work

☐ I used eight irregular participles correctly.

☐ Separable participles have ge in the middle.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the twenty irregular participles in vowel groups.
2. Copy the mixed verbs.
3. Copy six separable and inseparable participles.
4. Copy Luke 2:30 in German and English.

> **From history.** Jacob Grimm, the elder of the Brothers Grimm, was also a great scholar of language: in his German Grammar (1819 onward) he gave us the terms strong and weak verbs for irregular and regular verbs.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can sing or pray the Nunc dimittis (Herr, nun lässest du deinen Diener in Frieden fahren) at bedtime.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: I drank a glass of milk.

▼ **Show solution**

1. trinken → getrunken.

Answer: Ich habe ein Glas Milch getrunken.

Example 2. Say: We went shopping.

▼ **Show solution**

1. einkaufen → eingekauft.

Answer: Wir haben eingekauft.

Example 3. Say: I did not understand that.

▼ **Show solution**

1. verstehen → verstanden, no ge-.

Answer: Ich habe das nicht verstanden.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Participle of sehen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   gesehen.

2. Easy Participle of essen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   gegessen.

3. Easy Participle of schreiben?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   geschrieben.

4. Medium Participle of singen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   gesungen.

5. Medium Participle of anrufen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   angerufen.

6. Medium Participle of wissen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   gewusst.

7. Hard Write three sentences about last weekend with irregular participles.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich habe ein Buch gelesen. Wir haben Pizza gegessen. Am Sonntag haben wir in der Kirche gesungen.

8. Hard Translate Luke 2:30 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   For mine eyes have seen thy salvation.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Making irregular verbs regular: gesehet, getrinkt. Say gesehen, getrunken.
- Putting ge- in front of a separable verb: geeinkauft. Say eingekauft.
- Adding ge- to inseparable verbs: geverstanden. Say verstanden.

> **Make it a game · Partizip-Memory.** Make twenty pairs of cards: infinitive on one, participle on the other. Lay them face down. A player turns two; if they match (trinken / getrunken) and he says a Perfekt sentence with them, he keeps the pair.

> **Scripture.** “For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,” (Luke 2:30, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *denn meine Augen haben deinen Heiland gesehen,* Old Simeon, holding the infant Jesus in the temple, praises God that he has seen the promised Saviour. This song, the Nunc dimittis, is sung in evening prayer in many churches.

UNIT 11 · WAS HAST DU GEMACHT? DAS PERFEKT · LESSON 11.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

11.3 Das Perfekt mit sein: Motion and Change

OBJECTIVES

- Use sein with verbs of motion and change: ich bin gefahren, er ist geworden.
- Use sein and bleiben in the Perfekt: ich bin gewesen, ich bin geblieben.
- Choose between haben and sein.
- Read Psalm 37:25 in German.

> **Warm-up.** Some verbs do not use haben in the Perfekt but sein: verbs that move you from one place to another, or change you from one state to another. Today you learn which ones.

WATCH

The Perfect Tense in German - Part 2: Verbs of Movement - A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 9:37

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wVFqi0b1rv0

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the Perfekt of verbs of movement, about nine and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Sommerprogramm #6 - Warum bist du außer Atem? - How to Respond?! - A2/B1

lingoni GERMAN · 3:17

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4P5Cm03rBus

Session 2 or 3: a short conversation, Warum bist du außer Atem? The video is pitched a little above this level.

KEY TERMS

die Bewegung
Movement, motion (dee buh-VAY-goong).

gegangen
Gone, walked (guh-GAHNG-en).

gefahren
Driven, traveled (guh-FAH-ren).

gewesen
Been (guh-VAY-zen).

geworden
Become (guh-VOR-den).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

gegangen
guh-GAHNG-en
participle (gehen)
gone

gekommen
guh-KOM-men
participle (kommen)
come

gefahren
guh-FAH-ren
participle (fahren)
driven, traveled

geflogen
guh-FLOH-gen
participle (fliegen)
flown

gelaufen
guh-LOW-fen
participle (laufen)
run

gewesen
guh-VAY-zen
participle (sein)
been

geblieben
guh-BLEE-ben
participle (bleiben)
stayed

geworden
guh-VOR-den
participle (werden)
become

geschwommen
guh-SHVOM-men
participle (schwimmen)
swum

gewandert
guh-VAHN-dert
participle (wandern)
hiked

CORE IDEAS

The story. In 1705 the young Johann Sebastian Bach, organist at Arnstadt, asked for four weeks' leave to hear the great organist Dieterich Buxtehude in Lübeck, and he went on foot, a journey of some 400 kilometers each way. He stayed nearly four months, and his church council was not pleased when he came home. In German we would say: **Bach ist nach Lübeck gewandert. Er ist vier Monate geblieben.** The psalmist, looking back over a long life, also uses sein: **Ich bin jung gewesen und alt geworden und habe noch nie gesehen den Gerechten verlassen** (I have been young, and now am old; yet have I not seen the righteous forsaken).

How German works: sein for motion. Verbs of moving from place to place use sein: **gehen → ich bin gegangen, kommen → ich bin gekommen, fahren → ich bin gefahren, fliegen → ich bin geflogen, laufen → ich bin gelaufen, wandern → ich bin gewandert, schwimmen → ich bin geschwommen, aufstehen → ich bin aufgestanden. Wir sind nach Berlin gefahren. Bist du mit dem Zug gefahren?**

How German works: sein for change, and sein and bleiben. Verbs of changing state also use sein: **werden → ich bin geworden, aufwachen → ich bin aufgewacht, sterben → er ist gestorben.** Two more always take sein: **sein → ich bin gewesen** and **bleiben → ich bin geblieben. Ich bin krank gewesen. Wir sind zu Hause geblieben. Es ist kalt geworden.**

How German works: haben or sein? Ask: did the subject move from A to B, or change state? Then sein. Otherwise, haben: **Ich habe gegessen, aber ich bin gelaufen.** Remember sein: **ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind** + participle. In southern Germany and Austria people also say **ich bin gesessen** where northerners say **ich habe gesessen**; both are correct in their regions.

ACTIVITY

Reisebericht (travel report)

Write and present a report in the Perfekt about a trip your family has taken.

You will need

- Photos or drawings from a family trip
- A map

Steps

1. Choose a trip: where you went, how you traveled, what you saw and did.
2. Write eight sentences in the Perfekt, at least four with sein: Wir sind mit dem Auto gefahren. Wir sind drei Tage geblieben.
3. Mark the route on a map.
4. Present the report with the photos.

Tips

- Trace Bach's walk from Arnstadt to Lübeck on a map of Germany and write three sentences about it.
- Interview a grandparent: Wohin bist du als Kind gefahren?

Check your work

- ☐ My report uses four verbs with sein correctly.
- ☐ Every participle is correct.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the sein verbs in two lists: motion and change.
2. Copy the rule haben or sein?
3. Write your eight-sentence travel report.
4. Copy Psalm 37:25 in German and English.

> **From history.** Bach's visit to Lübeck in 1705 shaped his organ music for the rest of his life; Lübeck's St. Mary's Church, where Buxtehude played, is a great brick Gothic church on the Baltic coast.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can ask grandparents to tell, in the Perfekt, a story of how God has been faithful through their lives.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: We drove to Munich.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Motion: sein. fahren → gefahren.

Answer: Wir sind nach München gefahren.

Example 2. Say: I was sick.

▼ **Show solution**

1. sein → gewesen, with sein.

Answer: Ich bin krank gewesen.

Example 3. Say: He stayed at home.

▼ **Show solution**

1. bleiben takes sein.

Answer: Er ist zu Hause geblieben.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Participle of gehen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   gegangen.

2. Easy Participle of kommen?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   gekommen.

3. Easy Does fahren take haben or sein?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   sein.

4. Medium Fill in: Ich ___ früh aufgestanden.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   bin.

5. Medium Fill in: Er ___ einen Apfel gegessen.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   hat.

6. Medium Say: It has become cold.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Es ist kalt geworden.

7. Hard Write three sentences about a trip, two with sein and one with haben.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wir sind nach Österreich gefahren. Wir sind eine Woche geblieben. Wir haben viele Berge gesehen.

8. Hard Translate Psalm 37:25 (to verlassen) from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   I have been young, and now am old; yet have I not seen the righteous forsaken.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Using haben with motion: Ich habe gegangen. Say Ich bin gegangen.
- Using haben with sein and bleiben: Ich habe gewesen. Say Ich bin gewesen.
- Using sein with every irregular verb: Ich bin gegessen. Essen takes haben: Ich habe gegessen.

Make it a game · Haben oder sein? Aufstehen!. The caller says a participle (gegangen! gegessen! geblieben! geschrieben!). Players stand up for sein and stay seated for haben. Anyone who chooses wrong sits out a round; a correct sentence brings him back.

Scripture. "I have been young, and now am old; yet have I not seen the righteous forsaken, nor his seed begging bread." (Psalm 37:25, KJV)

In the Luther Bible (1912): *Ich bin jung gewesen und alt geworden* David, now old, testifies that God has never forsaken the righteous. Luther's German uses the Perfekt with sein twice: bin gewesen, bin geworden.

UNIT 12

Deutschland, Österreich, die Schweiz: Vergleiche und Rückblick

Lesson 12.1 names the German-speaking countries, capitals, languages and nationalities and practices word order with time, manner and place (Ich fahre morgen mit dem Zug nach Wien), with Acts 17:26.

Lesson 12.2 forms the comparative (schneller, größer, besser als; so groß wie) and studies Cranach's Luther as Junker Jörg, with Psalm 46:1. Lesson 12.3 forms the superlative (am größten, der höchste Berg), uses war and hatte for the past, tells the story of Leipzig in 1989, and reviews the whole year for the final exam, with 1 Corinthians 13:13.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–11.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name the German-speaking countries, their capitals and languages.
- ☐ I can order time, manner and place in a sentence.
- ☐ I can compare with the comparative and superlative.
- ☐ I can use war and hatte to talk about the past.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Luther Bible (print, or free online)**: Any edition of the Luther Bible; the course quotes the public-domain 1912 revision. Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

12.1 Die deutschsprachigen Länder: Countries and Word Order

4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

12.2 Luther auf der Wartburg: the Comparative 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

12.3 Der, die, das Beste: Superlative, war and hatte, and Review

4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 12 test

Unit 12 test. Questions 1–2 are oral. 50 points.

1. 5 pts

   Oral: Name four countries where German is spoken, with their capitals.

2. 5 pts

   Oral: Compare two members of your family in three sentences.

3. 5 pts

   Write: I come from the USA. I speak English and a little German.

4. 5 pts

   Put in order: nach Wien / morgen / ich fahre / mit dem Zug.

5. 5 pts

   Write the comparative and superlative: klein, schnell, groß, gut, viel.

6. 5 pts

   Write: Berlin is bigger than Munich. Munich is not as big as Berlin.

7. 5 pts

   Write: The Zugspitze is the highest mountain in Germany.

8. 5 pts

   Write in the past with war and hatte: I am tired. We have no time.

9. 5 pts

   Write 1 Corinthians 13:13 in German and translate.

10. 5 pts

    Describe Cranach’s Luther as Junker Jörg in three German sentences.

ANSWER KEY

1. Deutschland – Berlin; Österreich – Wien; die Schweiz – Bern; Liechtenstein – Vaduz.
2. For example: Mein Vater ist größer als meine Mutter. Meine Schwester ist jünger als ich. Mein Bruder spielt besser Fußball als ich.
3. Ich komme aus den USA. Ich spreche Englisch und ein bisschen Deutsch.
4. Ich fahre morgen mit dem Zug nach Wien.
5. kleiner, am kleinsten; schneller, am schnellsten; größer, am größten; besser, am besten; mehr, am meisten.
6. Berlin ist größer als München. München ist nicht so groß wie Berlin.
7. Die Zugspitze ist der höchste Berg Deutschlands. (Also: der höchste Berg in Deutschland.)
8. Ich war müde. Wir hatten keine Zeit.
9. Nun aber bleibt Glaube, Hoffnung, Liebe, diese drei; aber die Liebe ist die größte unter ihnen. And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity.
10. For example: Luther hat einen Bart und lange Haare. Er trägt schwarze Kleidung. Seine Hand liegt auf einem Schwert.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: EINE REISE DURCH DIE DEUTSCHSPRACHIGEN LÄNDER (A JOURNEY THROUGH THE GERMAN-SPEAKING LANDS)

Plan an imaginary two-week journey through Germany, Austria and Switzerland and present it in German as a travel guide. Include a map with at least six places (for example Wittenberg, the Wartburg, Leipzig, Vienna, Salzburg and Zürich), how you travel between them (time–manner–place), three comparisons (Wien ist größer als Salzburg), two superlatives (der höchste Berg, die älteste Stadt), one sentence about the Christian history of each place, and a closing paragraph in the Perfekt as if the trip were over.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Geography	Six correct places with accurate facts.
Grammar	Word order, comparatives, superlatives and Perfekt correct.
History and faith	One accurate sentence of Christian history per place.
Delivery	A clear, confident presentation.

UNIT 12 · DEUTSCHLAND, ÖSTERREICH, DIE SCHWEIZ: VERGLEICHE UND RÜCKBLICK · LESSON 12.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

12.1 Die deutschsprachigen Länder: Countries and Word Order

OBJECTIVES

- Name the German-speaking countries, capitals, languages and nationalities.
- Say where you come from and what languages you speak.
- Order time, manner and place in a sentence.
- Read Acts 17:26 in German.

> **Warm-up.** German is not only the language of Germany. Where else do people speak it? Today you travel through the German-speaking lands and learn to say where you are from and how you travel.

WATCH

Learn German Sentence Structure with TIME, MANNER, and PLACE Elements - A1

lingoni GERMAN · 5:50

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RKc-DQziquI

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on word order.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on sentence structure with time, manner and place, about six minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Welche Sprachen sprechen die Menschen in Köln? 🇩🇪 | Deutsch B1 Hören

lingoni GERMAN · 7:25

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Mk79CZibuXc

Session 2 or 3: a listening exercise about the languages people speak in Cologne. This is a B1 listening video, well above this level; play short sections and listen for language names.

KEY TERMS

das Land / die Länder
Country / countries (dahs LAHNT / dee LEN-der).

die Hauptstadt
The capital city (dee HOWPT-shtaht).

die Sprache
The language (dee SHPRAH-khuh).

Österreich
Austria (ÖS-ter-ryekh).

die Schweiz
Switzerland (dee SHVITES).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

das Land
dahs LAHNT
das · noun
country

die Hauptstadt
dee HOWPT-shtaht
die · noun
capital

die Sprache
dee SHPRAH-khuh
die · noun
language

Österreich
ÖS-ter-ryekh
proper noun
Austria

die Schweiz
dee SHVITES
die · proper noun
Switzerland

Englisch
ENG-lish
noun
English (language)

woher
voh-HAIR
question word
from where

sprechen
SHPREKH-en
verb (e → i)
to speak

Deutschland
DOYCH-lahnt
proper noun
Germany

Liechtenstein
LIKH-ten-shtine
proper noun
Liechtenstein

CORE IDEAS

The story. In Athens, standing before the council on the Areopagus, Paul told the learned men of the city about the unknown God: the God who made the world and all things therein, **Und er hat gemacht, daß von einem Blut aller Menschen Geschlechter auf dem ganzen Erdboden wohnen** (And hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth), and set the times and bounds of their dwelling, that they should seek the Lord. Every people and every language comes from His hand.

How German works: the German-speaking lands. German is the official language of **Deutschland** (Berlin), **Österreich** (Wien, Vienna) and **Liechtenstein** (Vaduz), and one of the official languages of **die Schweiz** (Bern), **Luxemburg** and **Belgien.** It is also spoken in South Tyrol in Italy. About ninety-five million people speak it as their mother tongue. Note the article: **in der Schweiz, aus der Schweiz**, and **in den USA, aus den USA**.

How German works: languages and nationalities. Woher kommst du? — Ich komme aus den USA. Ich bin Amerikaner / Amerikanerin. Welche Sprachen sprichst du? — Ich spreche Englisch und ein bisschen Deutsch. Languages: **Deutsch, Englisch, Französisch, Spanisch, Italienisch, Russisch.** People: **der Deutsche / die Deutsche, der Österreicher / die Österreicherin, der Schweizer / die Schweizerin.** No article after sein: **Er ist Österreicher.** The Swiss write ss instead of ß: **Strasse** for Straße.

How German works: time, manner, place. When a sentence has all three, German usually puts them in this order: **time (wann?) – manner (wie?) – place (wohin? wo?).** **Ich fahre morgen mit dem Zug nach Wien. Wir fliegen im Sommer mit der Familie in die Schweiz.** Many students remember it as **TeKaMoLo**: temporal, kausal (why), modal, lokal.

ACTIVITY

Map of the German-speaking lands

Draw and label a map of the German-speaking countries and plan a trip with time–manner–place sentences.

You will need

- A printed outline map of central Europe
- Colored pencils

Steps

1. Color Germany, Austria, Switzerland, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg and Belgium, and label them in German.
2. Mark the capitals and five other cities (Hamburg, München, Salzburg, Zürich, Wittenberg).
3. Write five travel sentences with time, manner and place: Am Montag fahren wir mit dem Zug nach Salzburg.
4. Present the map and your trip.

Tips

- Add one fact about Christian history to each country.
- Find where your family's ancestors came from, if from a German-speaking land, and mark it.

Check your work

☐ My map has six countries and capitals labeled correctly in German.

☐ My travel sentences follow time–manner–place.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the countries, capitals and languages in a table.
2. Copy the nationality words.
3. Write five time–manner–place sentences.
4. Copy Acts 17:26a in German and English.

From history. The Reformation came to Switzerland through Ulrich Zwingli, who began preaching through the Gospel of Matthew in Zürich in 1519; the Swiss reformers and Luther agreed on much but disagreed sharply about the Lord's Supper at Marburg in 1529.

At home in German. German-speaking families can tell the children where in the German-speaking lands their own family came from, if it did, and find it on a map.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: I come from Switzerland.

▼ **Show solution**

1. die Schweiz → aus der Schweiz.

Answer: Ich komme aus der Schweiz.

Example 2. Say: She is Austrian.

▼ **Show solution**

1. No article after sein.

Answer: Sie ist Österreicherin.

Example 3. Say: Tomorrow we are going to Berlin by train.

▼ **Show solution**

1. time – manner – place.

Answer: Morgen fahren wir mit dem Zug nach Berlin.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Capital of Österreich?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wien (Vienna).

2. Easy What is die Sprache?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The language.

3. Easy What is the German for Switzerland?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   die Schweiz.

4. Medium Say: I speak English and German.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich spreche Englisch und Deutsch.

5. Medium Name three countries where German is an official language.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Deutschland, Österreich, die Schweiz (also Liechtenstein, Luxemburg, Belgien).

6. Medium Put in order: nach Hause / heute / ich gehe / zu Fuß.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich gehe heute zu Fuß nach Hause.

7. Hard Write three sentences introducing yourself to a Swiss pen pal.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich heiße Daniel. Ich komme aus den USA und wohne in Texas. Ich spreche Englisch und ein bisschen Deutsch.

8. Hard Translate Acts 17:26a from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   And hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying in Schweiz. Switzerland has an article: in der Schweiz.
- Saying Ich bin ein Amerikaner. Leave out ein: Ich bin Amerikaner.

- Putting place before time: Ich fahre nach Wien morgen. Say Ich fahre morgen nach Wien.

> **Make it a game · Woher kommst du?.** Each player draws a card with a country and city. Others ask: Woher kommst du? Welche Sprache sprichst du? Wie fährst du nach Hause? The player answers with a full time–manner–place sentence. Guessers try to name the capital of the country for a point.

> **Scripture.** "And hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth, and hath determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation;" (Acts 17:26, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Und er hat gemacht, daß von einem Blut aller Menschen Geschlechter auf dem ganzen Erdboden wohnen* Paul at Athens proclaims that God made all nations of one blood and appointed their times and places. Luther's Geschlechter means families and peoples.

UNIT 12 · DEUTSCHLAND, ÖSTERREICH, DIE SCHWEIZ: VERGLEICHE UND RÜCKBLICK · LESSON 12.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

12.2 Luther auf der Wartburg: the Comparative

OBJECTIVES

- Form the comparative with -er and use als and so … wie.
- Learn the irregular comparatives (größer, besser, mehr, lieber).
- Describe Cranach's Luther as Junker Jörg.
- Read Psalm 46:1 in German.

> **Warm-up.** Who is taller in your family? Which is faster, a car or a train? Today you learn to compare in German, and you meet Luther in disguise, hiding in a castle, translating the Bible.

WATCH

German Lesson (81) - Der Komparativ - A2

lingoni GERMAN · 7:56

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=dLYFZZqpE6c

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on the comparative.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the comparative, about eight minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

als vs. wie - Comparisons in German - A2 [with Jenny]

lingoni GERMAN · 5:49

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KfTPskottPM

Session 2 or 3, for als and wie in comparisons.

KEY TERMS

der Komparativ
The comparative (dehr KOM-pah-rah-teef).

die Zuversicht
Confidence, refuge (dee TSOO-fair-zikht).

der Junker
Squire, young nobleman (dehr YOON-ker).

als
Than (in comparisons) (AHLS).

übersetzen
To translate (ü-ber-ZET-sen).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

größer
GRÖ-ser
comparative (groß)
bigger, taller

besser
BES-ser
comparative (gut)
better

mehr
MAIR
comparative (viel)
more

älter
EL-ter
comparative (alt)
older

als
AHLS
conjunction
than

so ... wie
ZOH ... VEE
phrase
as ... as

übersetzen
ü-ber-ZET-sen
verb
to translate

die Burg
dee BOORK
die · noun
castle, fortress

der Komparativ
dehr KOM-pah-rah-teef
der · noun
comparative

die Zuversicht
dee TSOO-fair-zikht
die · noun
refuge, confidence

CORE IDEAS

The story. After Luther refused to recant at Worms in 1521, his prince, Frederick the Wise, had him seized on the road home by friendly horsemen and hidden in the Wartburg castle above Eisenach. Luther let his hair and beard grow and lived as a knight, **Junker Jörg** (Squire George). There, in about eleven weeks, he translated the New Testament from Greek into German; it was printed in September 1522. He wanted a German that ordinary people spoke, and later wrote that a translator must listen to the mother in the home, the children in the street and the common man at

the market. Years later he wrote his great hymn on Psalm 46: **Gott ist unsre Zuversicht und Stärke** (God is our refuge and strength). **Ein feste Burg ist unser Gott.**

How German works: the comparative. Add **-er**: **klein → kleiner, schnell → schneller, schön → schöner, langsam → langsamer.** Many short words add an umlaut: **groß → größer, alt → älter, jung → jünger, lang → länger, warm → wärmer, kalt → kälter.** Than is **als**: **Mein Bruder ist älter als ich. Der Zug ist schneller als das Auto.**

How German works: irregular comparatives. gut → besser, viel → mehr, gern → lieber, hoch → höher. The Bible says: **Es ist besser ein wenig mit der Furcht des HERRN denn großer Schatz, darin Unruhe ist** (Better is little with the fear of the LORD than great treasure and trouble therewith). Luther wrote **denn** where today we say **als**, just as John ran **schneller denn Petrus**.

How German works: so … wie. For as … as, use **so … wie** with the plain adjective: **Ich bin so groß wie mein Vater. Hamburg ist nicht so groß wie Berlin.** Remember: **als** with the comparative, **wie** with so.

PICTURE STUDY



Luther as Junker Jörg, Lucas Cranach the Elder, about 1521–1522 · Oil on panel · Museum der bildenden Künste, Leipzig

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Cranach, Luther's friend in Wittenberg, painted him in his disguise: no monk's tonsure, no habit, but the long hair, beard and sword of a knight. The plain background and dark clothing put all the attention on the face, earnest and watchful. Pictures like this spread across Germany and made Luther's face known everywhere.

Look closely

- What is unusual about Luther's appearance compared with pictures of him as a monk?
- What is his hand resting on?
- Describe the background and his clothes.
- Where is he looking?

Talk about it

1. Describe the portrait in German, comparing it with a picture of Luther as a monk (Hier sind seine Haare länger).
2. Why did Luther need a disguise in 1521?

ACTIVITY

Vergleiche (comparisons) chart

Make a chart comparing people, places and things in German.

You will need

- Paper or poster board
- A measuring tape and a family height chart

Steps

1. Measure your family and write five comparisons: Papa ist größer als Mama. Ich bin so groß wie meine Schwester.
2. Compare three German cities by population (look them up): Berlin ist größer als Hamburg.
3. Compare two ways to travel: Der Zug ist schneller als das Fahrrad.
4. Read Psalm 46 in German and English.

Tips

- Sing or read the first verse of Ein feste Burg ist unser Gott in German.
- Compare Luther as a monk and as Junker Jörg in four sentences.

Check your work

☐ I wrote ten comparisons with correct endings and umlauts.

☐ I used als and so … wie correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the comparative rules with ten examples, including umlauts.
2. Copy the irregular comparatives.
3. Copy the als / so … wie rule with examples.
4. Copy Psalm 46:1 in German and English.

> **From history.** The first printing of Luther's September Testament of 1522, some three thousand copies, sold out quickly, and a second edition followed in December.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can sing Ein feste Burg ist unser Gott together on Reformation Day, October 31.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: My brother is older than I.

▼ **Show solution**

1. alt → älter; than: als.

Answer: Mein Bruder ist älter als ich.

Example 2. Say: I like tea better than coffee.

▼ **Show solution**

1. gern → lieber.

Answer: Ich trinke lieber Tee als Kaffee.

Example 3. Say: Munich is not as big as Berlin.

▼ **Show solution**

1. nicht so … wie.

Answer: München ist nicht so groß wie Berlin.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Comparative of klein?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   kleiner.

2. Easy Comparative of gut?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   besser.

3. Easy What does als mean in a comparison?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Than.

4. Medium Comparative of groß?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   größer.

5. Medium Say: The train is faster than the bus.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Der Zug ist schneller als der Bus.

6. Medium Say: I am as tall as my mother.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ich bin so groß wie meine Mutter.

7. Hard Why was Luther at the Wartburg, and what did he do there? Answer in two German sentences.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Luther war auf der Wartburg, denn er war in Gefahr. Er hat das Neue Testament übersetzt.

8. Hard Translate Psalm 46:1b from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   God is our refuge and strength.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying größer wie. With the comparative use als: größer als.
- Forgetting the umlaut: alter, großer. Say älter, größer.
- Saying guter or mehr gut. Say besser.

> **Make it a game · Wer ist größer?.** Lay out pictures of animals, cities or family members. The leader names two: der Elefant, die Maus! Players race to say a correct comparison: Der Elefant ist größer als die Maus! Use a new adjective each round.

> **Scripture.** “To the chief Musician for the sons of Korah, A Song upon Alamoth. God is our refuge and strength, a very present help in trouble.” (Psalm 46:1, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *Gott ist unsre Zuversicht und Stärke.* This psalm inspired Luther’s hymn Ein feste Burg ist unser Gott. In the Luther Bible the title is counted as verse 1, so this is verse 2 there.

UNIT 12 · DEUTSCHLAND, ÖSTERREICH, DIE SCHWEIZ: VERGLEICHE UND RÜCKBLICK · LESSON 12.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

12.3 Der, die, das Beste: Superlative, war and hatte, and Review

OBJECTIVES

- Form the superlative: am größten, der höchste Berg.
- Use war and hatte for the past of sein and haben.
- Tell the story of Leipzig in 1989 in simple German.
- Review the year; read 1 Corinthians 13:13 in German.

> **Warm-up.** What is the highest mountain in Germany? The longest river? The greatest of all virtues? Today you learn the superlative, two short past forms, and you look back over the whole year.

WATCH

German Lesson (103) - Der Superlativ - A2

lingoni GERMAN · 6:50

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IqO4iHUOqF0

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How German works paragraph on the superlative.

Note: lingoni GERMAN on the superlative, about seven minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

The verb "to be" in the Preterite Tense in German - Past Tense German Verbs - A2 [with Jacqueline]

lingoni GERMAN · 9:10

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=rlDb9TkSFw0

Session 2 or 3, for war, warst, waren.

KEY TERMS

der Superlativ
The superlative (dehr ZOO-per-lah-teef).

war
Was (VAHR).

hatte
Had (HAHT-tuh).

das Gebet
The prayer (dahs guh-BAYT).

die Mauer
The wall (dee MOW-er).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard German sounds: every letter is said, w sounds like v, z like ts, ei like eye and ie like ee, ch is breathed in the throat, and the capitals show where to lean: usually the first syllable.

am größten
ahm GRÖS-ten
superlative (groß)
biggest

am besten
ahm BES-ten
superlative (gut)
best

der höchste
dehr HÖKH-stuh
superlative (hoch)
the highest

war
VAHR
past (sein)
was

hatte
HAHT-tuh
past (haben)
had

die Mauer
dee MOW-er
die · noun
wall

das Gebet
dahs guh-BAYT
das · noun
prayer

die Liebe
dee LEE-buh
die · noun
love, charity

der Superlativ
dehr ZOO-per-lah-teef
der · noun
superlative

die Hoffnung
dee HOF-noong
die · noun
hope

CORE IDEAS

The story. For years, in communist East Germany, a few people met every Monday evening for prayers for peace in the Nikolaikirche in Leipzig, where Bach once worked. In the autumn of 1989 the prayer meetings overflowed. On October 9, about seventy thousand people walked peacefully through the city with candles, calling **Wir sind das Volk!** (We are the people!). The soldiers did not shoot. A month later, on November 9, the Berlin Wall was opened, and on October 3, 1990, Germany was one country again. An East German communist official later admitted that they had been prepared for everything, but not for candles and prayers. Paul wrote: **Nun aber**

bleibt Glaube, Hoffnung, Liebe, diese drei; aber die Liebe ist die größte unter ihnen (And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity).

How German works: the superlative. After sein, use **am …sten**: **schnell → am schnellsten, klein → am kleinsten, groß → am größten, alt → am ältesten** (add -e- after -t, -d, -s, -z). Before a noun: **der schnellste Zug, die größte Stadt, das älteste Haus**. Irregular: **gut → am besten, viel → am meisten, gern → am liebsten, hoch → am höchsten**. **Die Zugspitze ist der höchste Berg Deutschlands. Berlin ist die größte Stadt Deutschlands.**

How German works: war and hatte. For sein and haben, Germans usually use the simple past instead of the Perfekt: **ich war, du warst, er war, wir waren, ihr wart, sie waren**; **ich hatte, du hattest, er hatte, wir hatten, ihr hattet, sie hatten**. **Gestern war ich krank. Wir hatten keine Zeit. Wie war das Wetter? Es war kalt.** Also common: **ich konnte, ich musste, ich wollte** for modals.

How German works: the year in review. You have learned to greet (Units 1–2), to talk about family, school, food and the city (3–6), the body, clothes, weather and home (7–9), the feasts of the Church (10), the past (11) and comparisons (12). Grammar checklist for the final: verb second; sein, haben, werden, wissen; stem-changing, separable, reflexive and modal verbs; der/die/das in the nominative, accusative and dative; possessives; dieser and welcher; the Perfekt with haben and sein; comparatives and superlatives.

ACTIVITY

Year-end review book

Make a review booklet of the year and present the Leipzig story in German.

You will need

- Twelve sheets of paper stapled into a booklet
- Your German notebook and flashcards

Steps

1. Make one page per unit with the five most important words, one grammar rule and the unit's verse in German.
2. Write the Leipzig story in five simple German sentences with war, hatte and the Perfekt: 1989 war Deutschland geteilt. Die Menschen haben in der Nikolaikirche gebetet.
3. Write five superlatives about Germany or your family.
4. Present the story and your favorite page to your family.

Tips

- Look up the Nikolaikirche and write three sentences about it.
- Make a list of the ten German words you like best and why: Am liebsten mag ich das Wort ...

Check your work

☐ My booklet has a page for every unit.

☐ I used war, hatte and three superlatives correctly.

GERMAN NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the superlative rules with ten examples.
2. Copy the war and hatte charts.
3. Write the Leipzig story in five sentences.
4. Copy 1 Corinthians 13:13 in German and English.

> **From history.** The Ulm Minster in southern Germany has the tallest church steeple in the world, about 161 meters high; the young Albert Einstein was born in Ulm in 1879.

> **At home in German.** German-speaking families can pray together for the churches in Germany, Austria and Switzerland, as the Christians of Leipzig prayed in 1989.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say: Berlin is the biggest city in Germany.

▼ **Show solution**

1. groß → die größte Stadt.

Answer: Berlin ist die größte Stadt Deutschlands.

Example 2. Say: Of all, I like to read best.

▼ **Show solution**

1. gern → am liebsten.

Answer: Am liebsten lese ich.

Example 3. Say: Yesterday I was tired and had no time.

▼ **Show solution**

1. war, hatte.

Answer: Gestern war ich müde und hatte keine Zeit.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Superlative of schnell (after sein)?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   am schnellsten.

2. Easy Superlative of gut?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   am besten.

3. Easy Past of ich bin?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   ich war.

4. Medium Say: the oldest house.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   das älteste Haus.

5. Medium Say: We had a dog.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wir hatten einen Hund.

6. Medium Say: Where were you? (du)

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wo warst du?

7. Hard Tell in two sentences what happened in Leipzig in 1989.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Die Menschen haben in der Nikolaikirche gebetet. Am 9. Oktober sind siebzigtausend Menschen mit Kerzen durch die Stadt gegangen.

8. Hard Translate 1 Corinthians 13:13 from Luther.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying am größte. After sein use am …sten: am größten.
- Saying am gutesten. Say am besten.
- Saying ich habe gewesen. Use ich war (or ich bin gewesen).

> **Make it a game · Jahresquiz (year quiz).** Make forty question cards, three or four from each unit (verbs, vocabulary, verses, paintings). Players take turns drawing; a correct answer moves a token one square on a board drawn as a map from Wittenberg to Wien. The first to reach Wien wins.

> **Scripture.** “And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity.” (1 Corinthians 13:13, KJV)
>
> In the Luther Bible (1912): *aber die Liebe ist die größte unter ihnen.* Paul ends his chapter on love: faith, hope and love abide, but the greatest is love. Luther’s die größte is a superlative.

COURSE EXAM

Midterm Exam

Covers Units 1–6. Time: 60–75 minutes.

Questions 1–3 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 100 points. Grade with the separate answer key; give partial credit for answers that are understandable and nearly correct, and full credit for spelling only when umlauts, ß and capital letters on nouns are right.

---

1. **5 pts** **Lesson 2.2**
   Oral: Greet the parent formally for the afternoon, introduce yourself (name, age, where you live), and take leave.

2. **5 pts** **Lesson 3.1**
   Oral: Describe your family in four sentences (how many, names, ages, what they are like).

3. **5 pts** **Lesson 1.2**
   Oral: Read aloud: Im Anfang war das Wort, und das Wort war bei Gott, und Gott war das Wort.

4. **5 pts** **Lesson 1.1**
   du or Sie? (a) your cousin, (b) a police officer, (c) your dog, (d) your best friend’s grandmother, (e) a new classmate your age.

5. **5 pts** **Lesson 1.3**
   Write in words: 13, 21, 30, 17, 99.

6. **5 pts** **Lesson 2.1**

   Conjugate sein for ich, du, er, wir, ihr, sie.

7. **5 pts** **Lesson 3.2**

   Conjugate haben for ich, du, er, wir, ihr, sie.

8. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.2**

   Conjugate in the present for du and er: lernen, arbeiten, heißen, fahren, essen.

9. **5 pts** **Lesson 3.2**

   Write der, die or das and the plural: Bruder, Schwester, Kind, Buch, Stadt.

10. **5 pts** **Lesson 3.3**

    Write the possessive: (my) ___ Vater; (my) ___ Mutter; (your, du) ___ Eltern; (his) ___ Schwester; (our) ___ Haus.

11. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.3**

    Write the time in words (informal): 1:30, 4:15, 8:45, 12:00 noon, 10:05.

12. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.3**

    Rewrite with the time first, keeping the verb second: Ich habe am Montag Mathe. Wir essen um sechs Uhr.

13. **5 pts** **Lesson 5.2**

    Accusative: Ich habe ___ Bruder (a). Ich kaufe ___ Apfel (the). Er trinkt ___ Milch (the). Wir essen ___ Brot (a). Ich habe ___ Hund (no).

14. **5 pts** **Lesson 5.2**

    Make negative with kein or nicht: Ich habe einen Bleistift. Das ist mein Buch. Er kommt heute.

15. **5 pts** **Lesson 5.3**

    Translate: I would like a coffee and a piece of cake, please. What does that cost?

16. **5 pts** **Lesson 6.3**

    Translate: Where is the church? Go straight ahead and then left. (Sie)

17. **5 pts** **Lesson 6.2**

Translate: We are going by bus to school. My father drives to work.

18. **5 pts** **Lesson 6.3**

Write the du and Sie imperatives: kommen, essen, fahren.

19. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.2**

Write a paragraph of five German sentences about your school day, with at least three different verbs, one time and the verb second in every sentence.

20. **5 pts** **Lesson 2.1**

Scripture: Give the meaning of Im Anfang war das Wort (John 1:1) and of Ihr seid das Licht der Welt (Matthew 5:14).

ANSWER KEY

1. Guten Tag, Herr / Frau ___. Ich heiße ___. Ich bin ___ Jahre alt. Ich wohne in ___. Auf Wiedersehen!
2. Ich habe ___ Geschwister. Mein Vater heißt ___. Er ist ___ Jahre alt. Meine Mutter ist nett. (or similar)
3. Graded on W as English v (war, Wort), the a in Anfang, ei in bei, and the o in Gott and Wort.
4. (a) du, (b) Sie, (c) du, (d) Sie, (e) du.
5. dreizehn, einundzwanzig, dreißig, siebzehn, neunundneunzig.
6. ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind.
7. ich habe, du hast, er hat, wir haben, ihr habt, sie haben.
8. du lernst, er lernt; du arbeitest, er arbeitet; du heißt, er heißt; du fährst, er fährt; du isst, er isst.
9. der Bruder / die Brüder; die Schwester / die Schwestern; das Kind / die Kinder; das Buch / die Bücher; die Stadt / die Städte.
10. mein; meine; deine; seine; unser.
11. Es ist halb zwei. Es ist Viertel nach vier. Es ist Viertel vor neun. Es ist zwölf Uhr (Mittag). Es ist fünf nach zehn.
12. Am Montag habe ich Mathe. Um sechs Uhr essen wir.
13. einen; den; die; ein; keinen.
14. Ich habe keinen Bleistift. Das ist nicht mein Buch. Er kommt heute nicht.
15. Ich möchte einen Kaffee und ein Stück Kuchen, bitte. Was kostet das?
16. Wo ist die Kirche? Gehen Sie geradeaus und dann links.
17. Wir fahren mit dem Bus zur Schule. Mein Vater fährt zur Arbeit.
18. Komm! Kommen Sie!; Iss! Essen Sie!; Fahr! Fahren Sie!
19. Graded on correct present-tense verbs, verb-second word order, a time expression and articles.
20. In the beginning was the Word: Christ, the eternal Word, was with God and was God from the beginning. Ye are the light of the world: Christ's disciples are to shine before men so that they glorify the Father.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

COURSE EXAM

Final Exam

Covers Cumulative, with emphasis on Units 7–12. Time: 75–90 minutes.

Questions 1–3 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 100 points. Grade with the separate answer key; give partial credit for answers that are understandable and nearly correct, and full credit for spelling only when umlauts, ß, endings and capital letters on nouns are right.

---

1. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.1**
   Oral: Was hast du letztes Wochenende gemacht? Answer in four sentences.

2. **5 pts** **Lesson 9.1**
   Oral: Describe your daily routine from waking to bedtime in five sentences with times.

3. **5 pts** **Lesson 8.1**
   Oral: Wie ist das Wetter heute? Was trägst du? Was machst du gern?

4. **5 pts** **Lesson 7.1**
   Translate: My head hurts. I have a stomachache. My feet hurt. Get well soon!

5. **5 pts** **Lesson 7.3**
   Write the form of dieser or welcher: ___ Mantel ist teuer (this). Ich kaufe ___ Hemd (this). ___ Jacke gefällt dir (which)? ___ Hut nimmst du (which)?

6. **5 pts** **Lesson 8.1**
   Translate: It is snowing. It is cold. The sun is shining. It is twenty degrees.

7. **5 pts** **Lesson 8.2**
   Write the dates in words: on January 1, on October 3, on December 24.

8. **5 pts** **Lesson 8.3**
   Translate with gern, lieber, am liebsten: I like to read. I prefer to swim. Most of all I like to hike.

9. **5 pts** **Lesson 9.1**

   Conjugate sich anziehen for ich, du, er, wir.

10. **5 pts** **Lesson 9.2**

    Dative: Die Lampe steht auf ___ Tisch. Das Bild hängt an ___ Wand. Ich fahre mit ___ Auto. Wir sind in ___ Küche.

11. **5 pts** **Lesson 9.3**

    Translate: I can swim. You (du) must help. May I come along? We want to hike.

12. **5 pts** **Lesson 10.2**

    Write the er-form: geben, sehen, fahren, laufen, werden, wissen.

13. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.2**

    Perfekt with haben: ich (spielen); wir (kaufen); er (sehen); sie (trinken); du (einkaufen).

14. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.3**

    Perfekt with sein: ich (gehen); wir (fahren); er (bleiben); sie (werden); du (aufstehen).

15. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.3**

    Translate: Last year we drove to Austria; we saw Vienna and stayed a week.

16. **5 pts** **Lesson 12.3**

    Comparisons: Translate: My brother is older than I. Berlin is bigger than Hamburg. I am as tall as my mother.

17. **5 pts** **Lesson 12.3**

    Superlative and past: Translate: The Zugspitze is the highest mountain in Germany. Yesterday I was tired and had no time.

18. **5 pts** **Lesson 12.1**

    Put in order (time–manner–place): nach Wien / ich fahre / mit dem Zug / morgen. Then name the capitals of Germany, Austria and Switzerland.

19. **5 pts** **Lesson 10.1**

Culture: Name three feasts of the Church year in German and one German custom for one of them; where did Luther translate the New Testament, and in what year was it printed?

20. **5 pts** **Lesson 10.3**

Scripture: Translate and explain one: (a) Ich habe einen guten Kampf gekämpft (2 Timothy 4:7); (b) Gott ist unsre Zuversicht und Stärke (Psalm 46:1); (c) aber die Liebe ist die größte unter ihnen (1 Corinthians 13:13).

ANSWER KEY

1. Perfekt sentences such as: Ich bin in die Kirche gegangen. Ich habe mit meiner Familie gegessen. Ich habe ein Buch gelesen. Ich habe Fußball gespielt.
2. Ich wache um ... auf. Ich stehe auf. Ich wasche mich und ziehe mich an. Ich frühstücke um ... Ich gehe um ... ins Bett.
3. Es ist ... / Es regnet ... Ich trage ... Ich ... gern.
4. Mein Kopf tut weh. Ich habe Bauchschmerzen. Meine Füße tun weh. Gute Besserung!
5. Dieser; dieses; Welche; Welchen.
6. Es schneit. Es ist kalt. Die Sonne scheint. Es ist zwanzig Grad.
7. am ersten Januar, am dritten Oktober, am vierundzwanzigsten Dezember.
8. Ich lese gern. Ich schwimme lieber. Am liebsten wandere ich.
9. ich ziehe mich an, du ziehst dich an, er zieht sich an, wir ziehen uns an.
10. dem; der; dem; der.
11. Ich kann schwimmen. Du musst helfen. Darf ich mitkommen? Wir wollen wandern.
12. er gibt, er sieht, er fährt, er läuft, er wird, er weiß.
13. ich habe gespielt; wir haben gekauft; er hat gesehen; sie hat getrunken; du hast eingekauft.
14. ich bin gegangen; wir sind gefahren; er ist geblieben; sie ist geworden; du bist aufgestanden.
15. Letztes Jahr sind wir nach Österreich gefahren; wir haben Wien gesehen und sind eine Woche geblieben.
16. Mein Bruder ist älter als ich. Berlin ist größer als Hamburg. Ich bin so groß wie meine Mutter.
17. Die Zugspitze ist der höchste Berg in Deutschland (Deutschlands). Gestern war ich müde und hatte keine Zeit.
18. Ich fahre morgen mit dem Zug nach Wien. Berlin, Wien, Bern.
19. Weihnachten, Ostern, Pfingsten (Advent, Karfreitag, Reformationstag); for example the Adventskranz, Bescherung on Heiligabend, or Easter eggs; at the Wartburg; 1522.

20. (a) I have fought a good fight: Paul, at the end of his life, had been faithful to Christ. (b) God is our refuge and strength: God protects His people in every trouble (Luther's Ein feste Burg). (c) But the greatest of these is charity: love abides forever and is the greatest of the Christian virtues.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)